

ELETRE X

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

Welcome

Before driving your Lotus, it is recommended that you read this user manual to familiarize yourself with the vehicle's controls and functions. Following the information shown in this manual will help to ensure you drive safely, optimise vehicle performance as well as maintain the good condition of your Lotus. There are certain vehicle options described with a "*" symbol, indicating that the option may not be fitted to your vehicle specification or by vehicle market. Lotus Cars reserves the right to make changes, supplements, or terminations to the content and technical specifications of this manual at all times.

Welcome to the Lotus family.

Table of Contents

Introduction

User notice 12
Prompts and illustrations 13
Vehicle scrapping 13
Vehicle accessories 14
Event data recorder (EDR) 14
Contact Lotus 15
OTA system upgrade 15
Radio information 15
Tyre introduction 18

Overview

Front of vehicle 22
Rear of vehicle 22
Internal 23

Safety

Seat belt 27
  Function of seat belt 27
  Using the seat belts correctly 28
Airbag introduction 32
  Function of airbag 32
  Location of airbag 34
  Airbag deployment conditions 35
  Disabling of passenger front airbag 35
Children in car 37
  Child passenger safety guide 37
  Child seat 37
  Child safety lock 45
  Life detection and care 46
Lotus security system V 47

Device

Charging 51
  Charging cable 51
  Charging preparation 51
  Charging guidance 56
Fuel filling 60
  Fuel filling method 60
  Fuel information 61

Key introduction 61
Doors 69
Windows 78
Bonnet 82
Tailgate 84
Steering wheel 89
Adjustment of steering wheel 89
Buttons on steering wheel 89
Steering wheel heating 93
Combination instrument 94
Instrument overview 94
Indicators and warning lamps 98
Head-up display (HUD) 105
Lighting 107
External lighting control 107
Internal lighting control 112
Wiper control 115
Wing mirror adjustment 118
Outside mirror adjustment 118
Outside streaming mirror adjustment* 122
Inside mirror adjustment 129
Garage door opener (HomeLink)* 130
Seat 132
Front seat adjustment 132
Rear seat adjustment 135
Seat heating 138
Seat ventilation* 140
Air conditioner 141
Four-zone climate control system 141
Air outlet 151
Panoramic sunroof* 152
Wireless device charging 154
Car power 156
USB-C ports 156
12V power supply 157
Sun visors and vanity mirrors 159
Storage device 160
Center armrest 170
Front centre armrest 170
Rear centre armrest 171
Towing mode* 171
Parking comfort 174

Drive

Before you drive 178
Drive 179
Power on/off 179
Start 180

Shift operation 182
Acoustic vehicle alerting system 184
Active rear spoiler* 184
Air suspension 186
Active anti-roll bar* 188
Driving modes 189
Steering mode 191
Drive type 191
Active grille shutter (AGS) 191
Tyre pressure monitoring system 193
Safe parking 195
On-board monitoring(OBM) 195
Braking system 196
Energy recovery 196
AUTO HOLD 197
Electronic parking brake (EPB) 198
Intelligent driving system 198
Sensors and cameras 198
Adaptive cruise control (ACC) 202
Highway assist (HWA)* 210
Lotus hyper pilot* 217
Forward drive assist 225
Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) 225
Evasive maneuver assist (EMA)* 229
Front cross traffic alert (FCTA) 230
Lane keep assist (LKA) 232
Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) 236
Rear drive assist 240
Rear collision warning (RCW) 240
Blind spot detection (BSD) 241
Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) 243
Door opening warning (DOW) 245
Brake assist system 246
Comfort stop (CST) 246
Electronic stability control (ESC) 247
Traction control system (TCS) 248
Hill descent control (HDC) 249
Brake assist system (BAS) 250
Anti roll-over program (ARP) 251
Hill start assist (HSA) 251
Post impact control (PIC) 251
Park assist system 252
Parking assist (PA) 252
Visual parking assist (VPA) 253
Autonomous parking assist (APA)* 255
Driver performance support (DPS) 260

LOTUS HYPER OS

Notes to users 265
Central screen display 267
Start-up guidance 267
Desktop 267
Shortcut panel 268
Garage 268
Vehicle use preference function 269
Network settings 269
Bluetooth settings 270
Android Auto 270
Apple CarPlay 272
System application 274
Multimedia 274
Sound 275
Voice 276
Phone 279
Navigation 280
Set up 282
OTA system upgrade operation 286
Rear display 288

Maintenance

Necessity of maintenance 292
Daily maintenance 292
Scheduled maintenance 293
Warranty coverage 294
Warranty period 294
Service record 296
Change of ownership 299
Record of ownership change 299
Storage and maintenance 300
Battery 301
Tyre information 303
Tyre wear 303
Seasonal tyres 304
Tyre chains 304
Checking under the hood of the front compartment 305
Engine oil 305
Coolant 306
Brake fluid 308
Windscreen washer fluid 309
Pollen filter 310
Inspection and replacement of wiper blade 310
Exterior maintenance 311
Interior maintenance 315
Precautions during run-in period 317

Emergency

Guidance for traffic accidents 320
Emergency call 320
Hazard warning device 322
Hazard warning lamps 322
Warning triangle 323
Reflective vests 323
High voltage system information 323
Vehicle lifting 329
Jump starting 330
Replace fuse 332
Driver's tools 344
Quick temporary tyre repair 345
Having your car towed 348
Towing method 348
Towing procedures 349
Emergency rescue procedures 352
PPE for rescue personnel 352
Release method of high-voltage system 353
Regarding vehicle cutting 355
Rescue of wading vehicle 357
Rescue of vehicle on fire 357

Data

Vehicle identification 360
Vehicle nameplate 360
VIN location 360
How to read VIN 361
Drive motor model and number 362
Engine model and number 363
Microwave window 364
Technical parameter 364
Dimension parameters 364
Performance parameters 365
Drive motor parameters 365
Engine parameters 365
Weight parameters 366
High voltage battery parameters 366
Seat parameters 367
Wheel alignment parameter 367
Rim and Tyre specifications 368
Brake parameters 369
Fluid specification and capacity 369



INTRODUCTION |

User notice

This vehicle is a hybrid electric vehicle. Please follow the relevant warnings and instructions in the user manual (hereinafter referred to as this manual) during daily driving and maintenance to avoid vehicle damage and personal injury.

Please read this manual carefully before using the vehicle for the first time to have an understanding of your vehicle. Please be sure to maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance information shown in this manual. If any unexpected or unusual vehicle behavior/faults are experienced during use, please contact your Lotus retailer in time.

The copyright of this manual is owned by Lotus. No part of this manual may be reproduced or duplicated without the prior written consent of the company.

This guide provides an overview of the vehicle's main features and controls, some of which are for reference only and may not be applicable to your vehicle. The contents of this manual were correct at the time of publication. However, because of continuous product improvement, your vehicle may differ from the description and images in this manual. Lotus reserves the right to make changes without notice, please read the E-manual in the centre screen display (CSD) or mobile APP for the latest version of the manual.

The content, data, images, and explanations of this manual cannot be used as legal basis.

Your vehicle is equipped with a number of advanced driver assistance systems (ADAS) to provide an extra measure of safety. However, ADAS is installed only to assist the driver. ADAS should not be solely or over-relied upon as it may not operate correctly under all driving, weather, traffic, or road conditions (as explained in the ADAS section of this manual). ADAS is not a substitute for the driver maintaining complete control of the vehicle at all times whilst watching the road with both hands on the steering wheel. The driver shall be ready to take action and brake if necessary, closely paying attention to the task of driving, in a careful and responsible manner.

Warranty and maintenance information is also contained in this manual.

You can scan the QR code shown below to download the mobile APP.

Prompts and illustrations

Prompt information

⚠ Warning!

Personal injury

Used with the safety alert symbol to indicate a risk of death or serious injury for the driver, other vehicle occupants, other road users or bystanders.

! Caution!

Risk of vehicle damage

Messages are intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property or the environment.

ⓘ Note!

Helpful notes

Messages are intended to assist or guide the reader to other sources of information.

Illustration information

Symbols used in pictures or text of this manual:

- 1: indicates the object and position.
- : indicates the specific position.
- : indicates a turning action.
- : indicates the direction of motion.
- *: indicates that the described configuration is optional.

Vehicle scrapping

All vehicles should be scrapped in accordance with the requirements of any applicable local environmental protection regulations. Before the vehicle is to be scrapped, the following provisions must be strictly observed to avoid casualties:

- Airbags and seat belt pretensioners must be removed.
- The high voltage battery/accumulator battery must be removed.
- Remove any flammable and explosive parts of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

- Only authorized scrapped vehicle processing equipment can be used to handle scrapped vehicles or their components. When processing is required, please contact Lotus retailer.
- Batteries and high voltage batteries need to be handled by authorized processing agencies. When processing is required, please contact Lotus retailer.

High voltage battery recycling

The Lotus retailer will check the capacity and condition of the high voltage battery. The high voltage battery shall be recycled in accordance with applicable laws and regulations and combined with the market conditions at that time.

⚠ Warning!

- To avoid accidental fire or serious pollution to the environment, do not irresponsibly dispose of or discard used high voltage batteries.
- Do not hand over waste high voltage batteries to unregulated or unauthorised organizations or individuals. You may be held responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized disassembly of a high voltage battery.
- If the high voltage battery is damaged, there may be a delayed risk of fire. In this event, it will be necessary to place the vehicle or the damaged battery under surveillance in a dedicated and secure storage area so as to prevent the risk of a fire.

Vehicle accessories

Lotus parts and accessories have been produced to ensure their safety and suitability for your vehicle. To ensure the reliability, comfort, and handling of the vehicle, Lotus recommends using original parts and accessories.

⚠ Warning!

Do not modify the vehicle or fit any unapproved accessories, as this may affect the manoeuvrability, safety or durability of the vehicle, and may violate local government regulations. Lotus will not be held responsible for any vehicle damage, performance problems or safety accidents caused by unauthorized modifications.

Event data recorder (EDR)

The event data recorder (EDR) can automatically record the vehicle operation information and the status information of vehicle safety systems within a period of time before and after an event, such as:

- Vehicle speed.
- Whether the brake pedal is depressed.
- Longitudinal acceleration.
- Driver seat belt status.
- Percentage of accelerator pedal position and fully open position.
- Power-on cycle in the event.
- Power-on cycle in reading.
- Complete status of event data record.
- Time interval between this event and the last event.

Collecting and analysing the vehicle status data recorded by the EDR can help to understand the relevant situation before and after the event.

The data recorded by the EDR needs to be collected using special diagnostic equipment connected to the vehicle. If necessary, please contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre for this equipment.

Lotus may use the data recorded by the EDR for engineering research, which will help Lotus to continuously improve product quality and safety. The data recorded by the EDR will not be disclosed to third parties except in the following cases:

- With the owner's consent.
- In compliance with the requirements of administrative and judicial authorities.
- In accordance with laws and regulations.

Contact Lotus

If you encounter any problems when using your vehicle, you can contact us by visiting the website: https://www.lotuscars.com/

OTA system upgrade

Over-the-air (OTA) software upgrades are provided to enhance or improve existing vehicle systems and may provide new features or functionality. Lotus recommends that you should upgrade your car as soon as possible after receiving an upgrade notification message.

Please refer to **OTA system upgrade operation** (p.286) for specific operation and introduction.

Radio information

Your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare the RF Modules listed on the following pages have been evaluated against the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the declaration of conformity can be found at the following internet address: https://www.lotuscars.com/en/eu-doc

The relevant information of radio electronic components of this vehicle is listed below:

Component name / Description	Frequency band	Max transmitted power	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer address
Tyre pressure monitoring sensor	433.92 MHz	0.000012 W	Schrader electronics ltd	11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim, Northern Ireland, BT41 1QS, UK.
TCAM	698 Mhz–5 GHz	1W	Neusoft Group (Dalian) Co.,Ltd.	No.901-7 Huangpu Road, Ganjingzi District, Dalian City, Liaoning Province, P.R. China
Radar-side obstacle detection	76GHz-77 GHz	50 dbm	WHST CO., LTD.	Factory 1, Wanchun High-tech Innovation Park, East District of Economic & Technological Development Zone, Wuhu, China
FM amplifier	A.FM: 87.5–	1.5 W	Fuba automotive electronics (Suzhou) Co., LTD.	Building 16 No.859 Pangjin
	108MHz B.DAB: 174.0 – 240 MHz			Road, Wujiang Economics & Technological Development Zone, Jiangsu Province, China 215200
Occupation detection radar	60GHz-64GHz	20 dbm	WHST CO., LTD.	Factory 1, Wanchun High-thch Innovation Park, East District of Economic & Technological Development Zone, Wuhu, Anhui, China
BLE and NFC communication	2.4GHz Bluetooth	10dbm	Marquardt	Marquardt GmbH Schloss-str. 16, 78604 Rietheim-Weilheim, Germany

Component name / Description	Frequency band	Max transmitted power	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer address
module				
Ultra wide band antenna	6–8GHz	2W	Marquardt	Marquardt GmbH Schloss-str. 16, 78604 Rietheim-Weilheim, Germany
NFC reader (outside the vehicle)	13.56 MHz	2W	Marquardt	Marquardt GmbH Schloss-str. 16, 78604 Rietheim-Weilheim, Germany
NFC reader (inside the vehicle)	13.56 MHz	2.5 W	Changzhou tenglong autoparts Co., LTD	No.1 Tenglong Road Economic Development Zone, Wujin District, Changzhou, Jiangsu 213149, China

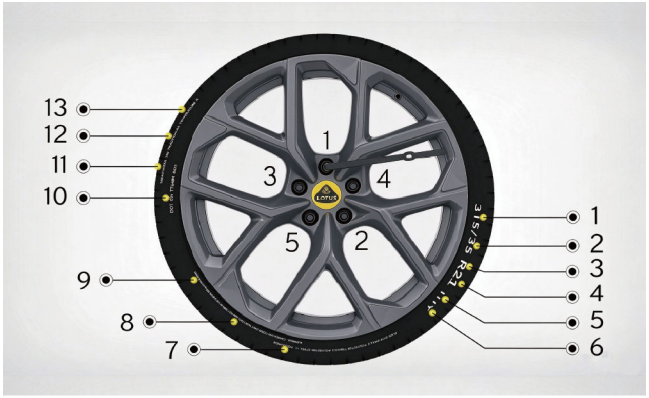
Component name / Description	Frequency band	Max transmitted power	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer address
Key fob	2.4GHz, 6–8GHz	5dbm	Marquardt	Marquardt GmbH Schloss-str. 16, 78604 Rietheim-Weilheim, Germany
Phone wireless charging	Phone wireless charging: 100–148.5 KHz NFC:13.56 MHz	≤70W	Zhejiang ZEEKR Intelligent Technology Co., Ltd.	Room 1031, Building 1, Liaohe Road Commercia Building, Xingqing Street, Beilun District, Ningbo City, Zhejiang Province, China
RADAR – LONG RANGE	76-77 GHz	40 dbm	Aumovio Automotive Systems (Shanghai) Co.,Ltd.	No.600 Xingxian Road, Jiading Industrial Zone, 201815, Shanghai, P.R. China

Component name / Description	Frequency band	Max transmitted power	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer address
Garage door opener	433.05MHz-434.79MHz, 868.00MHz-868.60MHz,868.70MHz-869.20MHz	0.03mW 0.50mW 0.70mW	Gentex Corporation	600 North Centennial Street Zeeland MI 49464 USA
IVI module	2.4GHz/5GHz	15~24dBm	ECARX	1268 Kangqiao East Road, Pudong

Tyre introduction

tyre markings

Laws require tyre manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tyres. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre.



1. Tyre width: These 3 digits represent the width of the tyre from one sidewall to the other sidewall (in millimetres).
2. Aspect ratio: These 2 digits represent the height of the tyre sidewall, shown as a percentage of the tread width. Therefore, if the tread width is 205mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height would be 102.5mm.

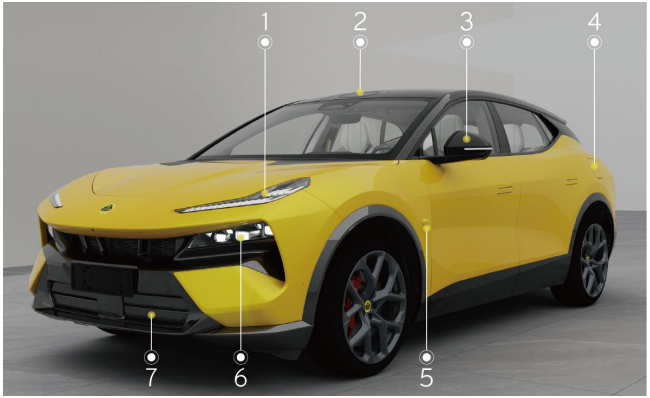
3. Tyre structure: R represents the radial structure of the tyre.
4. Hub diameter: These 2 digits represent the diameter of the wheel hub in inches.
5. Load index: These 2 or 3 digits represent the load capacity of each tyre, this number is not always displayed.
6. Rated speed: When specified, represents the maximum speed (mph or km/h) at which the tyre can be used for prolonged periods.

   Q=99mph(160km/h), R=106mph(170km/h), S=112mph(180km/h), T=118mph(190km/h), U=124mph(200km/h), H=130mph(210km/h), V=149mph(240km/h), W=168mph(270km/h), Y=186mph(300km/h), (Y) = Maximum speed (exceeding "Y" grade).
7. Composition and material of tyres: This digit represents how many layers of rubber coating materials are present in the tread and tyre wall areas, and also identifies the type of materials used.
8. Maximum tyre load: The maximum weight that a tyre can support.
9. Maximum allowable inflation pressure: This pressure should not be used for normal driving.
10. The tyre Identification Number (TIN) in the United States DOT: It starts with the letters DOT, representing that the tyre meets all federal standards. The following 2 digits/letters represent the code of the tyre manufacturing factory, and the last 4 digits represent the year and week of manufacture. For example, 1712 represents the 17th week of 2012. Other digits are marketing codes determined by the manufacturer. This information can be used to contact consumers when there is a defect in the tyre that requires a recall.
11. Treadwear grade: This digit represents the rate of wear on the tyre. The higher the treadwear number, the longer it will take for the tread to wear out. A tyre with a grade of 400 will last twice as long as a tyre with a grade of 200.
12. Traction grade: Represents the tyre's ability to stop on wet slippery roads. tyres with a higher grade can help your vehicle come to a stop in a shorter distance compared to tyres with a lower grade. Traction is ranked from high to low using the letters AA, A, B, and C.
13. Temperature grade: The tyre's heat resistance level is graded as A, B, or C, with A representing the highest heat resistance level. A grade is provided by properly inflated tyres, with both speed and load not exceeding the limits.



OVERVIEW |

Front of vehicle



Front of vehicle

1. Integrated daytime running lamps (p.107)
2. Front LiDAR* (p.198)
3. Exterior door mirrors (p.118)
4. Integrated charging port (p.56)
5. Outside front camera (p.198)
6. Hidden headlamps (p.107)
7. Active grille shutter (AGS) (p.191)

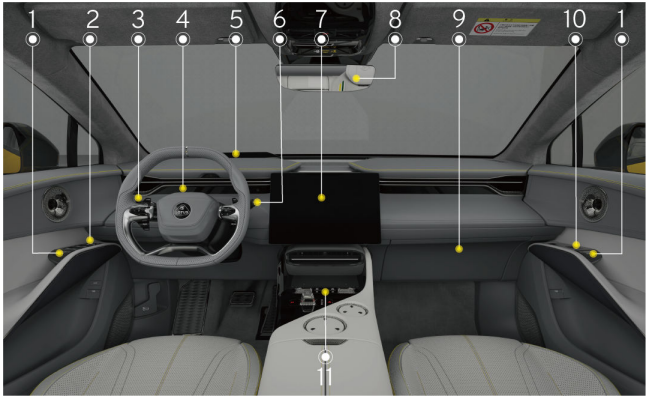
Rear of vehicle



Rear of vehicle

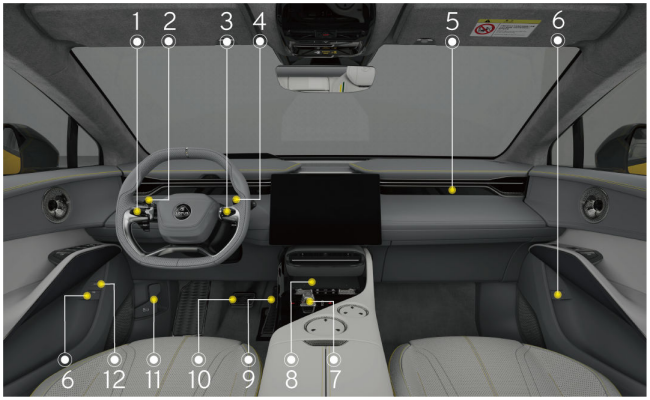
1. Full-width variable-light tail lamp
2. Active rear spoiler* (p.184)
3. High mounted stop lamp
4. Rear position lamps/directional indicator lamps
5. Fuel filler (p.60)

Internal



Internal

1. Door opening/closing button (p.69)
2. Window control switch/child safety lock/door mirror adjustment switch (p.78)(p.45)(p.118)
3. Exterior lighting switch (p.107)
4. Driver display (p.94)
5. Head-up display (HUD) (p.105)
6. Wiper combination switch (p.115)
7. Centre screen display (CSD) (p.267)
8. Rear view mirror (p.129)
9. Glove box (p.160)
10. Front passenger window control switch (p.78)
11. Combination switch (p.69)(p.141)(p.160)



Internal

1. Left hand keypad switches (p.89)
2. Energy recovery paddle (p.196)
3. Right hand keypad switches (p.89)
4. Driving mode paddle (p.189)
5. Passenger screen display (p.94)
6. Emergency door release handle (p.69)
7. Gear selector (p.182)

8. Wireless charging induction area (p.154)
9. Accelerator pedal
10. Brake pedal
11. Bonnet opening handle (p.82)
12. Tailgate switch (p.84)



SAFETY |

Seat belt

Function of seat belt

Inertia reel seat belts allow forward movement of the upper body under normal driving conditions, but the belt will lock automatically during braking, acceleration, cornering forces, or on impact in a collision. Locking will also occur if the vehicle is tilted in any direction.

⚠ Warning!

- Never clip or attach the seat belt to other internal connectors, as this may cause the seat belt not to tighten properly.
- Seat belts are designed for persons over 1.5 metres tall, and to ensure child safety, children who are young (under 12 years old) or short (under 1.5 metres) should be seated in child safety seats. Adults under 1.5 metres tall should use the seat belts, sitting on a suitable booster cushion.
- Only one person is allowed per seat belt, a seat belt should not be shared between multiple people or children.
- Do not modify or remove the seat belt.
- Do not install equipment that may change the direction or tension of the seat belts. This may cause the seat belt to become slack and not provide maximum protection.

Seat belt check

Seat belts are an important safety component, and an improperly functioning seat belt may not provide adequate protection in the event of an accident, so please follow these steps to check your seat belt before each trip. If a seat belt is not working correctly then please contact your Lotus retailer for inspection.

- Check for twisted or dirty seat belts.
- Check seat belts for severe wear, cuts or burns.
- Insert the seat belt latch into the locking buckle, pull the latch in the opposite direction and check the seat belt buckle is the latch is locked into the buckle.
- Quickly pull the seat belt and check the automatic retract and tension of the seat belt.

⚠ Warning!

- The front seats of this car are equipped with electric pretensioning and force-limiting seat belts. If you need to replace a seat belt, only use a suitable original or approved part to ensure the safety of the vehicle occupants.
- Seat belts are important safety components.. When replacing them, please use original or approved parts to better ensure the safety of passengers in the car.

Using the seat belts correctly

⚠ Warning!

When the vehicle is in motion, all occupants must always fasten their seat belts, otherwise accidents or sudden braking may cause serious personal injury.

Before driving all occupants must be wearing their seat belts (and wearing them correctly).

With the seat belt fitted, ensure that you are seated comfortably and the vehicle controls, foot pedals and steering wheel are within easy reach.



A reminder in the driver display and a message in the centre screen display, alerts unbelted occupants to wear their seat belt.

Contact your Lotus retailer if all seat belts are worn properly but the reminder and alarm do not extinguish.

ⓘ Note!

When the seat belt reminder indicator is illuminated, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and fasten the seat belt.

Seat belt shoulder height adjuster



Seat belt shoulder height adjuster

Press and hold the release switch to move the seat belt shoulder height adjuster up and down, adjusting to the required position for your shoulder height.

⚠ Warning!

- To avoid a potential accident, never adjust the seat belt shoulder height adjuster whilst driving.
- Misadjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in the event of a crash.

ⓘ Note!

After adjusting, check if the seat belt shoulder height adjuster locks securely.

Seat belt pretensioner

In the event of a collision (depending on the angle and severity of the collision), the seat belt pretensioner will automatically tension the seat belt to effectively hold the occupants in place and thus reduce the forward lean angle of the occupants.

When the seat belt pretensioner is deployed, a small amount of dust (smoke) will be released with a loud noise. Prolonged exposure to the smoke and dust from the pretensioner deployment may cause eye or skin irritation.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not touch the belt pretensioner after it detonates. After a collision, the pretensioner will become hot and may burn your skin.
- If your eyes and skin come into contact with the dust (smoke), rinse with water immediately.
- If the seat belt tensioner is activated after an incident, it must be replaced; airbags, seat belt tensioners, and other related components must be inspected at the Lotus retailer and replaced if necessary.

ⓘ Note!

- If the seat belt pretensioner and airbag were not activated in the event of a collision, the possible cause may be that the strength of the collision was not sufficient to activate them, rather than a malfunction.
- Seat belt pre-tensioners will only activate once, after activation it must be replaced by a Lotus retailer.

Electric seat belt tensioners

The driver's and front passenger's seat belts are equipped with electric seat belt tensioners. The seat belt tensioners are activated during collision risks. In critical situations, such as if the vehicle brakes suddenly, begins to skid or runs off the road (e.g if the

vehicle rolls into a ditch, lifts off the ground or hits an obstacle in the road), or if there is a risk of collision, the seat belts are pulled taut by the seat belt tensioner's electric motor.

The electric seat belt tensioner helps to position the occupant more effectively in the seat, which reduces the risk of the occupant striking the interior of the passenger compartment and improves the effectivness of other safety systems such as the airbags.

Once the critical situation has passed, the seat belt and the electric seat belt tensioner are reset automatically, but if the seat belt remains taut it can be reset manually.

! Caution!

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the passenger-side electric seat belt tensioner is also deactivated.

Resetting the electric seat belt tensioners

The electric seat belt tensioners are designed to be reset automatically, but if the seat belt remains taut it can be reset manually.

1. Stop the vehicle in a safe location.
2. Unbuckle the seat belt and then rebuckle it.

The seat belt and the electric seat belt tensioner will be reset.

ⓘ Note!

Please contact your Lotus retailer if the electric seat belt tensioner resetting procedure fails.

Wearing a seat belt

1. Sit erect and fully back in the seat. Hold the seat belt tongue, pull it across the body and withdraw the belt from the retractor.



Wearing a seat belt

2. Press the seat belt latch into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound. Pull the latch to make sure it is locked.
3. The belt should be positioned closely over the shoulder (against the collarbone, not down over the arm).

4. Pull on the belt to check for correct latching and ensure that the belt fits firmly against the body with all the slack taken up by the reel.
5. To release, press the red button on the belt buckle, then let the belt retract.



Seat belt buckle

⚠ Warning!

- The belt should be worn low across the front of the pelvis (not over the abdomen) and across the chest and shoulder.
- The seat back should not be tilted too far back. The shoulder belt must be taut in order to function properly.
- Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.
- If you notice signs of wear, cracking or other damage to your seat belts, be sure to contact your Lotus retailer for replacement.
- Avoid contact with chemicals and liquid. Contact your Lotus retailer for repairs if the seat belt cannot be retracted or it is locked in the buckle and cannot be removed.
- Do not insert anything into the buckle except the seat belt latch intended for that buckle, otherwise the buckle may fail, reducing the protective effect of the seat belt, and causing serious injury.
- When the seat belt is not in use, it should be fully retracted and never draped. If the seat belt cannot be fully retracted, be sure to contact your Lotus retailer to arrainge replacement.
- People with disabilities should also wear seat belts. If there are special circumstances, consult a doctor for advice.

! Caution!

Before closing the doors, make sure that the doors will not catch the seat belt or latch to avoid damage to the vehicle, seat belt or latch.

ⓘ Note!

When you pull the seat belt over your body at a faster speed, it may cause the seat belt to be locked. In this case, just retract the seat belt to unlock it, and then slowly pull it over your body.

Fitting during pregnancy

Pregnant drivers should always wear seat belts to protect both themselves and their unborn child.



Fitting during pregnancy

Pull the seat belt over your chest and keep the lap belt as low as possible under the abdomen, so that the seat belt can fit closely with your body.

Pregnant women should adjust the position of the driver seat and steering wheel when driving the vehicle, and increase the distance between the abdomen and the steering wheel as much as possible, but ensure that the accelerator pedal, brake pedal and steering wheel can still be easily operated while driving.

ⓘ Note!

A doctor should regularly be consulted as to the advisability of driving during pregnancy.

Airbag introduction

Function of airbag

Airbags are an important component of the safety system. In the event of a frontal collision, the frontal airbag can protect the driver and front passenger and avoid or reduce secondary collision injuries. In the event of a side collision, the curtain airbag and the side airbag can provide support and protection for the head, chest and hip, while the central airbag can prevent or reduce injuries suffered by the driver and front passenger due to collision. In the event that the vehicle rolls over, the curtain airbag helps protect occupants from being thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

If the airbag warning lamp stays on after the vehicle has started or if it illuminates while you are driving, you must stop the vehicle at a safe place and contact your Lotus retailer.

⚠ Warning!

- Even if the airbags have not deployed after a collision. There could be internal damage to the safety systems, ensure to arrange an inspection with your Lotus retailer.
- Drivers and passengers must maintain a safe distance from their airbags to avoid injuries if an airbag is deployed.
- Always hold the steering wheel while driving the vehicle to minimize injuries to your hand or arm caused by airbag deployment.
- Never carry anything, children or pets in a front passenger seat.
- Do not install items such as navigation devices or mobile phone holders between the passenger fascia panel and the front windscreen, and do not place body parts such as legs or feet against the passenger fascia panel.
- Do not install radio equipment within the deployment range of the airbag to avoid radio signals affecting the normal deployment of the airbag.
- Do not attach cushion covers or other item to the front seats, which may reduce the performance of side airbag deployment.
- Do not vigorously tap the airbag area in the centre of the steering wheel.
- Do not attempt to disassemble or remove the steering wheel.
- Do not attempt to change or interfere with any airbag or safety system wiring or components.
- Individual components of the airbag system may be hot after airbag deployment. There is a danger of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Airbag warning sign

There are airbag warning signs on both sides of the passenger sun visor, reminding you to never put a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, because of the risk of death or serious injury to the child in the eveny of passenger airbag deployment.



Airbag warning sign 1



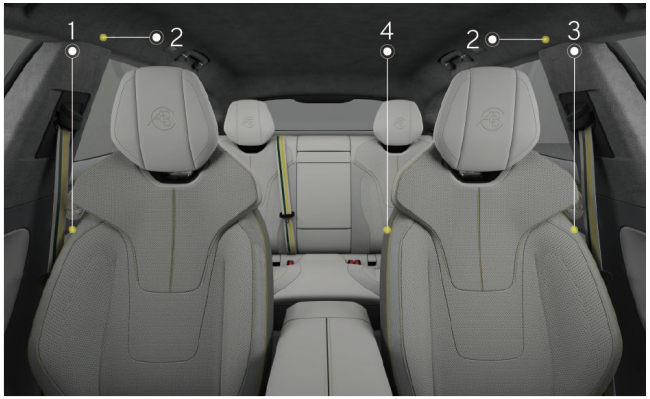
Airbag warning sign 2

Location of airbag



Frontal airbag

1. Driver frontal airbag
2. Passenger frontal airbag



Side airbag

1. Passenger side airbag
2. Curtain airbag
3. Driver side airbag
4. Central airbag

Airbag deployment conditions

In a severe frontal collision, the airbags inflate in a fraction of a second to provide protection for the upper body of the occupants. Dependent upon the angle of collision (front or near frontal) the driver and passenger airbags may activate without activating any other airbags.

⚠ Warning!

Airbags may produce dust (fumes) when deployed. If the eyes or skin are exposed to dust (fumes), please immediately rinse with clean water, as prolonged exposure may cause discomfort.

Cases when airbags may not be deployed

Airbag deployment depends on the severity of the impact detected by the collision sensor at the time of the collision.

Airbags may not deploy in any of the following situations:

- In case of rear-end collision, side collision or roll-over, the frontal airbags may not deploy.
- If the deceleration or braking force does not meet the airbag sensor trigger condition, the airbags and curtains may not deploy. Such collisions include impacting a flexible object (such as a snow pile or a bush), or into an object at a low speed, or the collision of two vehicles driving at relatively low speeds.
- If the vehicle collides with the underbody of a large vehicle, such as a container lorry.
- The Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) has failed.

Disabling of passenger front airbag

The default state for the passenger front airbag is to be enabled. Children who are unable to sit up by themselves unsupported must

be carried only in a rearward facing child seat. When installing a rearward facing child seat in the front passenger seat, be sure to click the icon in the centre screen display and select **Safety** to manually turn off the front passenger airbag.

Front facing child seat

When fitting a front facing child seat, ensure that the front passenger airbag is enabled.

⚠ Warning!

- Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the airbag is enabled, otherwise, death or serious injury can occur.
- Do not sit on the front passenger seat (adults and children) if the passenger airbag is disabled.



The front passenger airbag indicator

1. Front passenger airbag enabled indicator
2. Front passenger airbag disabled indicator

When the vehicle is in the **READY** state, shift the gear to D, N or R position. After the passenger frontal airbag is turned on/off, the corresponding indicator will be illuminated.

Children in car

Child passenger safety guide

In order to fully ensure the safety of children riding with you, Lotus recommends installing child seats on the rear seats for children to sit on, children should never be held in the arms of an occupant.

To ensure child and other occupants safety, Lotus recommends that you should use a suitably sized child seat that complies with applicable regulations and standards.

⚠ Warning!

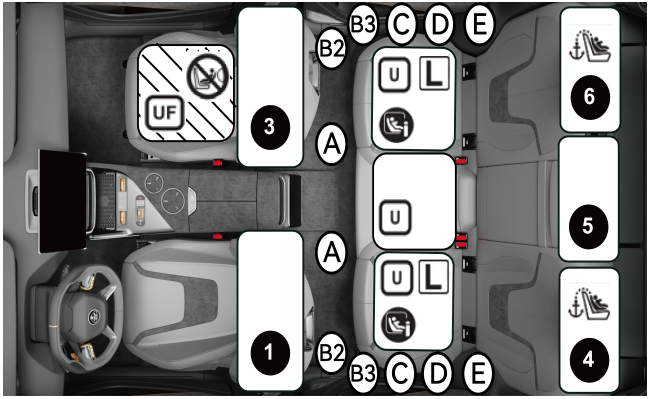
- Children under 1.5 metres tall should not be seated in the front passenger seat.
- Never use seat belt extenders on a seat belt that is used to install a child seat or booster seat.
- When not in use, keep the child restraint system secured or remove it from the passenger compartment to help prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or collision.
- Adults in the vehicle should be responsible for the safety of the child passengers.
- Do not allow children to stand or kneel in the seat, or be placed in the boot. Failure to do so may lead to personal injury in the event of a collision or sudden braking.
- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle unattended. On hot days, the temperature in the vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure to these high temperatures for even a short period of time can cause heat-related injury or death. Small children are particularly at risk.
- Do not allow children to use the key, fob or NFC card, otherwise children may cause personal injury or car damage due to misuse.
- To avoid unintentional opening of rear doors by occupant(s), the child safety lock feature needs to be activated (p.45). Child safety lock activation will also disable rear window regulator switches.
- Do not allow more than one child to share a single child seat at the same time.
- Make sure there are no hard or sharp objects on the child seat to prevent personal injury in the event of an accident.

Child seat

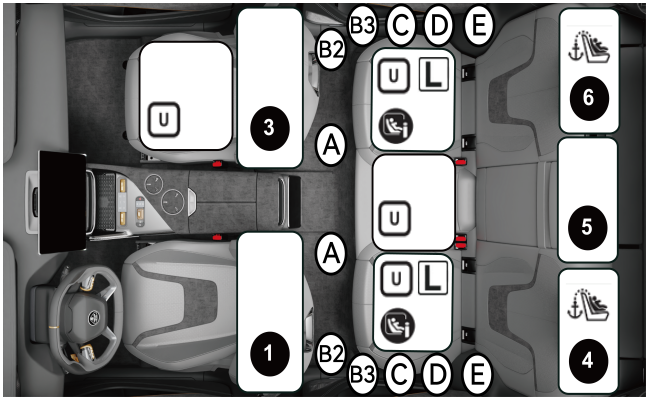
Please use a child seat that complies with applicable regulations or standards.

When the passenger frontal airbag is activated, do not install a child seat on the front passenger seat.

Passenger front frontal airbag on



Passenger front frontal airbag off





Apply to the approved "universal" child seat.



Apply to the approved forward-facing "universal" child seat.



Apply to specific child seat listed in the attached table. These restrictions may belong to the categories of "specific vehicles", "restricted", or "semi universal".



Apply to i-Size and ISOFIX child seat.



Seat position and top tether anchorages.



Apply to forward-facing child seat.



Do not install the rear-facing child seat.



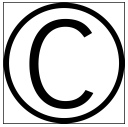
ISO/F3: forward-facing, higher child seat.



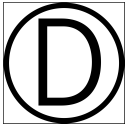
ISO/B2: rear-facing child seat with full size.



ISO/B3: forward-facing child seat with full size.



ISO/R3: rear-facing child seat with reduced size.



ISO/R2: rear-facing child seat with reduced size.



ISO/R1: rear-facing child seat (infant).

⚠ Warning!

- It is important to properly secure the child seat to avoid personal injury or death in the event of a collision or sudden braking.
- Do not install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat to avoid personal injury or death when the passenger frontal airbag is deployed.

- When installing a forward-facing child seat on front passenger seat, adjust the front passenger seat to an appropriate height as far as possible.
- When installing a child seat, adjust the backrest angle of the seat reasonably to ensure stability of the child seat.
- When installing a child seat, adjust the height of the headrest to avoid interference with the child seat.
- If a child seat is installed on the rear seat, the driver and front passenger shall keep an appropriate distance between their seat and the child seat when adjusting the seat backward or backrest angle.
- Never use one tether or one lower anchorage to fit more than one child seat. Multiple seats can stress the tethers or anchorages and may cause damage to the tethers or anchorages, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.
- When a child is sitting in a safety seat, the tethers on the safety seat must be checked to ensure that they are intact and not damaged.
- Be sure to choose a safety seat that is suitable to ensure that the child's neck and head are effectively supported.
- It is not allowed to let infants and young children sit on an adults lap when riding, they should ride in suitable child seats.

ⓘ Note!

- Top tethers apply to a forward-facing child seat. The rear seat angle can be adjusted if necessary to facilitate the installation of the top tether.
- Lotus recommends that smaller children should be seated in a rear-facing child seat as much as possible.
- A suitable booster cushion or child seat should be used if the belt touches the child's neck. This advice also applies to any adult of small stature.

Recommended child restraint system – Secured with the vehicle seat belt			
Weight class	**Manufacturer**	**Type**	**Authorisation number**
Group 0 & 0+ Up to 13 kg	Maxi Cosi	Pebble 360	030063
Group I 9 –18 kg	–	–	–
Group II	Graco	Booster Basic	E11 – 0444165

Recommended child restraint system – Secured with the vehicle seat belt			
15 – 25 kg			
Group III 22 – 36 kg	Graco	Booster Basic	E11 – 0444165

Recommended child restraint system – Secured with i-Size syste			
Weight class	**Manufacturer**	**Type**	**Authorisation number**
Group 0 & 0+ Up to 13 kg	Maxi Cosi	Pebble 360 + FamilyFix 360 base	030063
Group I 9 –18 kg	Britax Römer	Trifix2 i-Size	129R – 010015
Group II 15 – 25 kg	Britax Römer	Kidfix i-Size	E1 129R03 / 04 0061 01
Group III 22 – 36 kg	Britax Römer	Kidfix i-Size	E1 129R03 / 04 0061 01

CRS categories	**Seat position / Seat number**					
	Driver	**Passenger[4)]**		**Rear outboard**		
	1	**3**		**Left**	**Centre**	**Right**
		Airbag ON[2)]	**Airbag OFF**	**4[5)]**	**5[3)5)]**	**6[5)]**
Universal belted CRS[1)] (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Carry-cot (Lateral Forward facing ISOFIX CRS) (L1/L2)	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward-facing CRS (R1/R2X/ R2/R3)	No	No	No	C (R3)	No	C (R3)
Largest suitable forward-	No	No	No	A (F3)	No	A (F3)

CRS categories	Seat position / Seat number					
	Driver	Passenger[4]		Rear outboard		
	1	3		Left	Centre	Right
		Airbag ON[2]	Airbag OFF	4[5]	5[3][5]	6[5]
facing CRS (F2X/F2/F3)						
Largest suitable booster CRS	No	No	B2/B3	B2/B3	No	B2/B3
i-Size CRS (Yes/No)	No	No		Yes	No	Yes
Seat position equipped with top tether (Yes/No)	No	No		Yes	No	Yes

Yes: suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS;

No: not suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS.

Remarks:

Do not place a reanward-facing child seat on the passenger seat when the airbag is activated

[1] The universal belted CRS applies to all mass groups;

[2] Only forward-facing child restraint system;

[3] Seat 5 is only available for vehicles with 3 rear seats and is only suitable for installing child restraint system secured with vehicles seat belt;

[4] When installing a child seat on the front passenger seat, the below instructions need to be followed:

- In use of a rearward facing child, adjust the front passenger seat rearward that the child restraint system does not interfere with the passenger screen or adjust the seat position fully rearward.
- In use of a rearward facing child seat adjust the passenger seat height to the highest position.
- In use of an ISO B2/B3 child restraint system, adjust the seat height of the passenger seat to the lowest position.
- Adjust the front passenger seatback to make the child restraint system be installed stable. The backrest of the child restraint system must lie as flat as possible against the back rest of the vehicle seat.
- Adjust the seat belt anchorage to the third adjustment position up from lowest position.
- Adjust the headrest upward to prevent interference with the child restraint system.

[5] When installing a CRS on the second-row seat, the below instructions need to be followed:

- A certain distance shall be kept between the front seat and the child seat.

- Adjust the CRS seat back angle to make the child seat be installed stable. The backrest of the child restraint system must lie as flat as possible against the back rest of the vehicle seat.
- Adjust or remove the rear seat headrest to prevent interference with the CRS.
- Please store the removed headrest in the boot for safe transportation. When the child seat is removed from the vehicle, the headrest must be restored.

Mass level	Size category	Child restraint system
Group 0 0–10kg	F	ISO/L1
	G	ISO/L2
	E	ISO/R1
Group 0+ 0–13kg	C	ISO/R3
	D	ISO/R2
	E	ISO/R1
Group I 9–18kg	A	ISO/F3
	B	ISO/F2
	B1	ISO/F2X
	C	ISO/R3
	D	ISO/R2
Group II 15-25kg	B2/B3	ISO/B2/B3
Group III 22-36kg	B2/B3	ISO/B2/B3

Installation of i-Size child seat



child seat sign

i-Size anchorages are located in the two rear outer seats, and the i-Size logo is imprinted on the cover of the anchorage connection points.



Installation location

The child seat top tether anchorage connection points are located behind the rear seat backrest.

Observe the installation instructions supplied with the child seat and use i-Size anchorages.

⚠ Warning!

- It is important to properly secure the child seat to avoid personal injury or death in the event of a collision or sudden braking.
- After installing a child seat in the vehicle, do not adjust the vehicle seat, as this can loosen the safety seat attachments. Remove the safety seat before adjusting the vehicle seat position. When the vehicle seat has been adjusted, reinstall the safety seat.
- If the vehicle head restraint prevents proper installation of a child restraint system, the head restraint of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.
- Never route a top tether strap over the top of the head restraint. The strap should be routed beneath the head restraint.
- Always check and adjust every child's safety harness or seat belt for every trip.
- If a child seat is installed on the rear seat, the driver and front passenger shall keep an 50 mm between their seat and the child seat when adjusting the seat backward or backrest angle.
- Never use one tether or one anchorage to fit more than one child seat. Multiple seats can stress the tethers or anchorages and may cause damage to the tethers or anchorages, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
- Child seat anchorages can only withstand the loads created by a properly installed child seat. Under no circumstances should the above anchorage be used as an adult seat belt or seat harness. Otherwise, injury may be caused in a vehicle collision.

- When a child is sitting in a safety seat, the tethers on the safety seat shall be checked to ensure that they are intact and not damaged.
- It is not allowed to let infants and young children sit on adult thighs when riding, and they should ride in suitable child seats.
- It should not be possible to move the child restraint more than 25 mm in any direction along the seat belt path.

ⓘ Note!

- Top tethers of child seat apply to a forward-facing child seat. The rear seat backrest angle can be adjusted if necessary to facilitate the installation of the top tether for a child seat.
- It is recommended to place smaller children in rear-facing child seats.
- A suitable booster cushion or child seat should be used if the belt touches the child's neck. This advice also applies to any adult of small stature.
- Use caution when installing child seats to ensure that sharp edges or protruding parts on the child seat do not damage the vehicle's interior.
- Long-term installation and use of child seats could damage the vehicle's interior. Lotus recommends using the kick guard accessory to help protect the vehicle's interior.

Child safety lock

The rear doors of the vehicle are equipped with child safety locks, which can prevent occupants from opening the doors or windows with the electric release switch or the emergency handle, thus reducing the risk of accidents.



Child safety lock

1. Driver door rear left child safety lock switch
2. Driver door rear right child safety lock switch

When the child safety lock switch is pressed, the corresponding child safety lock will be enabled, and the corresponding door and window button in the rear row will be disabled, and the mechanical

emergency handle function is not available. When the child safety lock switch is pressed again, the corresponding child safety lock will be disabled and the relevant functions will be enabled.

ⓘ Note!

In the event of a collision, the child safety lock will be automatically unlocked.

Life detection and care

The vehicle is equipped with a life detection and care system, which monitors whether there are children or pets stranded inside after you lock and leave the vehicle with a valid key. If this happens, the system will send a series of warnings to remind you.



The life detection and care system is enabled by default, and you can choose to enable or disable this function by tapping the ⚙ icon on the centre screen display and selecting **Safety** . After this function is disabled, there will be information prompts displayed on the driver display and the centre screen display.

With this function ON, if the system detects that there are children or pets left in the car for too long, it will issue a warning and push a message to your mobile APP to remind you to deal with the situation in time. The warnings issued by the system are divided into different levels. The higher the level, the higher the danger in the car.

- Level 1 warning: the vehicle will trigger the hazard warning lamps and horn alarm, and send an alert message to your mobile APP.
- Level 2 warning: if you have ignored the alert message, the vehicle will continuously trigger the hazard warning lamps and horn alarm at the frequency of once every minute.
- Level 3 warning: if you continue to ignore a level 2 alert message, then after a period of time, The vehicle will continuously trigger the hazard warning lamps and horn alarm at the frequency of once every minute for 30 min and activate the E-call; if the system detects that the temperature is too high, the system will automatically open the windows for ventilation and activate the E-call; at this time, you will receive further alert messages on your mobile APP.

ⓘ Note!

The life detection and care system can only assist in confirming whether there are children or pets left in the vehicle, and the system may misjudge or fail to detect under certain circumstances. Before leaving the vehicle, the driver should make sure that no children or pets are left in the vehicle.

ⓘ Note!

The Life detection and care system function may not work properly when:

- The unattended children or pets are covered by coverings, which is beyond the recognition capability of the system.
- Unattended children or pets are in a blind spot for Life detection and care system.
- The movement of items in the vehicle, such as clothes hanging on coat hooks etc, may interfere with the system's judgement and create false alerts.
- Additional accessories added to the radar installation area in the car or damage to the ceiling.
- A system fault has occurred (e.g., camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Lotus security system V

The functions of the Lotus security system V can prevent unauthorised persons from illegally entering and starting your vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

Do not leave the card key or key fob in the vehicle.

! Caution!

- The vehicle is provided with the Lotus security system V, but it cannot prevent all thefts or guarantee the absolute safety of the vehicle. You should always be mindful of the security of your personal property and do not leave valuables in the car.
- Do not attempt to modify the Lotus security system V as this may cause system failure.

Vehicle locking & anti-theft

If you lock the vehicle from the outside, the Lotus security system V will be armed after a period time. If it is detected that any of the doors, bonnet, or the tailgate is opened with an invalid key, the left and right direction indicator lamps will flash and the vehicle horn will sound to issue a warning.

If the vehicle is unlocked from the outside with a valid key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be deactivated.

ⓘ Note!

- When the Lotus security system V is turned on and the system detects that the vehicle is being lifted, the system will alarm.
- When the alarm is armed, cutting off the power supply (battery) to the vehicle security system will activate the alarm.
- If the Lotus security system V malfunctions, please contact your Lotus retailer to inspection.

ⓘ Note!

- If there is electromagnetic interference around the vehicle, such as a power plant or signal tower, the Lotus security system V may not work normally.
- If you lose your vehicle, you can lock it and track it remotely via the Lotus Customer Care Centre.

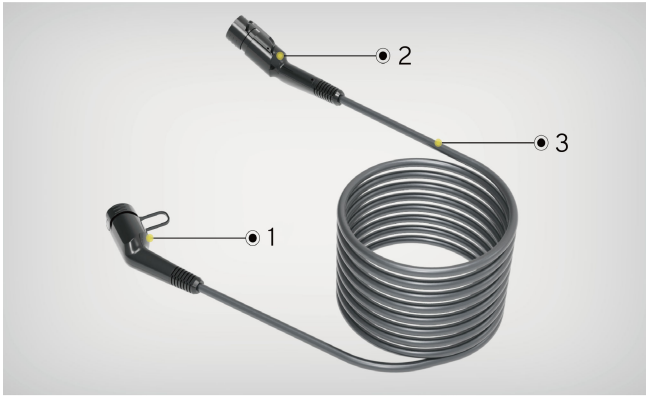


DEVICE |

Charging

Charging cable

The charging cable is located under the front hood.



1. Vehicle plug
2. Charger plug
3. Charging cable

⚠ Warning!

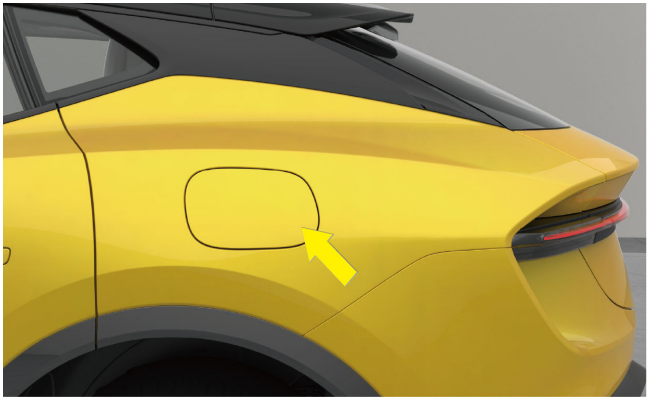
- Do not use the charging cable with extension cords or adapters.
- If the plug emits smoke or melts, do not touch the charging cable or vehicle plug. Stop the charging process and press the emergency stop button on the charger.
- Make sure to keep the charging cable away from children.
- When the plug is not in use, ensure that it is covered with a dust cover or placed in a suitable position.
- Do not clean the charging cable when connected to the vehicle.
- Do not use a jet washer or steam or cleaners with corrosive agents on the charging cable or connectors.
- Do not soak charging cables in liquid.

Charging preparation

When the low battery warning indicator of the driver display lights up with a text prompt, please charge the vehicle. The charging port is located at the left rear side of the vehicle.

The charging port cover can be opened or closed in the following ways:

- Unlocking the vehicle using a valid key and pressing the outside of the charging port cover.
- Pressing the cover close button.



Open the charging port cover



Cover closing button

- Click icon to enter the garage space interface, then click icon, and the charging port cover will automatically open or close.

The charging port cover will close automatically under any of the following circumstances:

- If not closed within a certain time period after disconnecting the charging cable plug.
- If not closed within a certain time period after opening the charging port cover.
- If the vehicle is locked.
- If the vehicle speed is greater than 0.

⚠ Warning!

- Unlock the vehicle before inserting/pulling out the charging plug. Always insert/pull out the charging plug upright without twisting, shaking or aggressive operation.
- Stop charging immediately if you smell a strong odour or burning smell from the charger.
- Never allow children to contact or use the charging device.
- Before charging, ensure that the charging port connectors, charging plug and socket are not contaminated with water or foreign objects to avoid damage to the vehicle.

- Do not charge the vehicle or use the charging device if the charging port or the metal jack of the charging plug is corroded, deformed, cracked, etc.
- If you have implanted electronic medical equipment such as a cardiac pacemaker or cardiovascular defibrillator, please do not enter or stay in the vehicle while the vehicle is charging, otherwise the function of the electronic medical equipment may be affected, resulting in personal injury or death.
- Never remove or modify the charging port or charging device.
- After charging, close the charging port cover immediately to prevent the ingress of rain, snow or other impurities.
- Do not charge when the connection between the charging plug and the socket is not secure.
- In the event of thunderstorms, it is recommended to stop charging the vehicle, because lightning may cause damage to the charging device.

Caution!

- Ice and snow in the charging port cover area may affect the opening of the charging port cover, so be sure to manually clear the ice to open the charging port cover.
- When the charging port cover area is icy or obstructed, do not force the charging port cover to open, otherwise the charging port cover may be damaged.
- When the ambient temperature is below -20℃, do not use AC charging equipment with a power of 3.3kW or less (including self-purchased on-board charging equipment) to charge the vehicle, to avoid causing power loss.

Note!

- The charging port cover opening or closing slowly indicates that the cover has a position fault and is in a self-learning state. After the self-learning is completed, the operation of the cover will return to normal.
- The vehicle can only be charged when parked, and cannot be charged whilst running or if a software upgrade is in progress.
- Gear shifting is not possible whilst the vehicle is being charged.

Charging settings



Tap the icon on the centre screen display to select the **Charging** APP and enter the charging setting interface.

- Charging limit: drag the scale mark to the charging limit slider to set the charging power.
- Max current for AC charging: the charging current is classified into 5A, 8A, 16A, MAX.
- Pause/resume charging: tap the **STOP** button to stop charging. Tap the **START** button to resume charging.

ⓘ Note!

- The minimum charging limit can be set to 50% and the maximum can be set to 100%. the charging current is available in 4 levels.
- If the temperature of the high voltage battery is too low or the air conditioner is used during charging, then the charging time will be extended. The charging speed will be relatively low at high SOC ranges of the high voltage battery.
- The charger cutting out whilst charging may be caused by fluctuations in the power grid. The charging current can be appropriately reduced by referring to the charging current displayed on the central screen display to ensure normal charging. If cutting out continues, please contact your Lotus retailer.
- The above content is only applicable to AC charging.

Parking power generation

When parked, the parking power generation function can be used to start the engine to charge the high voltage battery.

When using the parking power generation function, the following conditions must be met:

- The vehicle is in the Ready state.
- The gear is in P - park position.

Tap the icon on the centre screen display to select the **Charging** APP and enter the charging setting interface. Turn on or off the parking power generation function, set the charging power and target battery level. You can also use the voice function to turn on or off the parking power generation function.

After activating the parking power generation function, a pop-up reminder with infromation of the functions usage and precautions will be shown in the centre screen display, and the parking power generation indicator light on the driver display will illuminate and display the power generation output.

Note!

If the charging power is too high, it may cause the engine compartment to overheat, affecting the air conditioning's cooling performance. If this happens a pop-up reminder will be shown in the centre display.

Scheduled trip

According to your trip plan, you can choose **Vehicle control** in the mobile APP, click **More APP** , select **Schedule** and then select **Trip** to enter the scheduled trip setting interface, where you can set scheduled trip charging, enable air conditioning pre-start and battery preheating functions.

When a scheduled charging in trip is set, the vehicle will automatically calculate the charging start time and trigger the charging based on current time, trip time, charging amount and off-peak hours. If the charging plug is already connected, a short pre-charging will be activated and the charging start time will be calculated, which will then be indicated via the Lotus APP.

Note!

- Scheduled charging is only applicable to Lotus household AC charging stations.
- Do not pause/turn off the charging function through the Lotus APP or centre screen display, otherwise the booking travel charging function cannot be used.
- When the high voltage battery has less than 30% state of charge, the pre-charge will charge the high voltage battery to 31% before calculating the charging start time.
- When the charging time is not enough to charge the power battery to the target level, the charging will begin immediately.

With the preconditioning enabled, the air conditioning will be switched on automatically approximately 15 minutes before the trip.

Note!

After the driver unlocks the vehicle, the air conditioning automatically turns off.

With the preconditioning enabled, the temperature of the high voltage battery will be monitored about 1 hour before the trip time, and it will be preconditioned to the appropriate range according to the set level.

Timed charging

According to your trip plan, you can choose **Vehicle control** in the mobile APP, click **More APP** , select **Schedule** and then **Charging** to enter the timed charging setting interface, where you can turn on or off the timed charging function and set the charging time period.

ⓘ Note!

- The timed charging function is only applicable to the household AC charging piles for Lotus sports cars.
- Do not pause or turn off the charging function via the Lotus brand mobile APP or centre screen display, as this may affect the timed charging function.
- The timed charging function and scheduled trip cannot be enabled simultaneously.

Battery preheating at low temperature

The low-temperature high voltage battery preheating function is to heat the high voltage battery to a specified temperature through a charging device when it is below a certain temperature, so that the temperature of the battery can meet the needs of rapid charging.

After heating to the specified temperature, the charging mode will be entered automatically. The voltage and current of the traction battery during preheating can be checked via the mobile APP or the centre screen display.

You can tap the ▪ icon on the central display, select the charging app, and enter the charging settings screen to turn the **Regulate battery temperature** function on or off. You can also enable or disable this function via the mobile APP.

ⓘ Note!

- If the preheating function of the high voltage battery fails or is abnormal, please contact your Lotus retailer immediately.
- To use the vehicle at a low-temperature environment, operate the vehicle as soon as possible after the preheating of the high voltage battery. Long-term parking will reduce the heating effect.

Charging guidance

During charging, the charging status of the vehicle can be viewed from:

- Instrument panel
- Centre screen display (CSD)
- Mobile APP
- Charging port indicator



Charging port indicator

White (constantly illuminated): the charging port cover is opened.

Green (flashing): the battery is charging normally within a period of time after the charging plug is connected.

Green: the charging is complete and lasts for 2 minutes.

Orange (constantly illuminated): indicates the battery preheating function is on. When the high voltage battery temperature is too low, it will be heated first after the charging plug is inserted and then will automatically switch to charging mode after heating is completed, the indicator light switching to green flashing.

Red: Charging failure occurred and lasts for 2 minutes.

Blue (constantly illuminated): Reservation charging waiting indicator. When the mobile app completes the reservation setting, the blue indicator light remains constantly on; after charging starts, the indicator light turns to green flashing.

ⓘ Note!

When charging, the driver display and tail lamp will display light flow effect. In case of a fault, the charging will stop, and the driver display will turn red with a fault displayed.

Charging using a charging station

1. With the vehicle unlocked, press the charging port cover on the rear left side of the vehicle to open.
2. Remove the charging plug from the charging station, and insert it into the charging port, the electronic lock will be enabled automatically.
3. Operate according to instructions on the charging station to start charging the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be charged if the electronic lock is not locked. In this case, you can try to pull out the charging plug to check whether the electronic lock is locked.
4. During charging, you can swipe the card to stop charging or select stop charging on the centre screen display or mobile APP, after charging is stopped, you can choose resume charging; After charging, you can unlock the electronic lock by using a

valid key or central unlock switch and then remove the charging plug from the vehicle.

5. Press the charging port cover closing button to close the charging port cover and return the charging plug to the charging station.

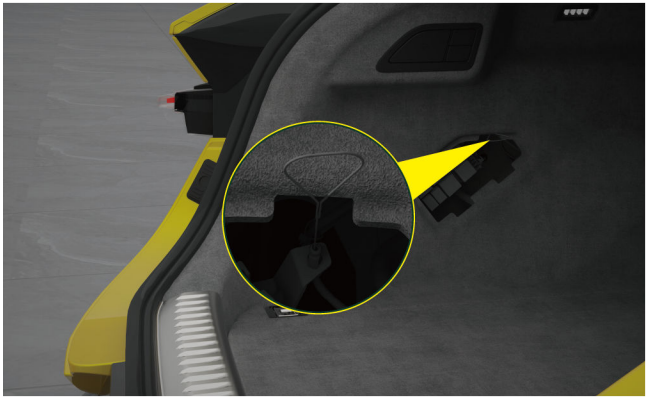
⚠ Warning!

- When using a charging station, be sure to abide by all instructions and regulations displayed on the charging station.
- Before charging, confirm that the charging station complies with applicable national standards.
- If encountering an emergency during charging, press the emergency stop button on the charging station to stop charging.
- Charging station standards may be different between nationality and manufacturers, therefore it is possible that some charging stations may not be suitable for charging your vehicle.

ⓘ Note!

When charging in the charging pile with an output voltage lower than 924V(Max battery voltage), then the car need to initial the booster to raise the voltage for charging, the max charging power will be limited to 80-100kW.

Electronic lock emergency release cable



Emergency unlocking pull cord for electronic lock

The emergency cord of the electronic lock is placed behind the interior maintenance cover at the left rear of the boot.

⚠ Warning!

When using the emergency unlocking pull cord for the electronic lock, please fully open the tailgate and keep it still to avoid pinching your fingers.

ⓘ Note!

When the vehicle loses power or the electronic lock fails, causing the charging cable to be unable to be removed, the emergency unlocking pull cord for electronic lock can be pulled to unlock it.

Vehicle power supply

This vehicle is equipped with an external power supply function and must be used with the discharge equipment dedicated to Lotus sports cars. External power supply is delivered through the AC charging/discharging port. The external discharge equipment converts the power from the traction battery into 220V AC for use.

- The **Discharging** can be enabled on the centre screen display after the power plug is inserted and the external discharge equipment is turned on for a period of time.

ⓘ Note!

Before power supply, ensure that the power battery level is above 20% or the fuel level exceeds 15%.

- During the power supply, you can tap **STOP** to end the power supply.

ⓘ Note!

- Power supply to external devices shall stop when the power battery level drops 20% and the fuel level is less than 15%.
- The vehicle can be set to start automatically when the battery level is low.
- The external discharge equipment has a maximum external power supply output of 3.3kW.
- This function is only applicable to external discharge equipment designated by Lotus. Third-party discharge equipment may cause unexpected effects such as vehicle over-discharge.

Fuel filling

Fuel filling method



Fuel filler

The fuel filler flap is located on the right rear side of the vehicle.

You can unlock the fuel filler flap in the following ways:

- Click the icon on the centre screen display, enter the garage space interface screen, and then click the switch.
- Swipe down from the top of the centre screen display and click the fuel filler cap unlock switch in the quick access panel.

After the fuel filler flap is unlocked, press and release the left side of the flap to open. Gently press the flap inwards and then release to close.

The fuel filler flap will lock automatically in any of the following situations:

- When the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h with the fuel filler flap closed.
- When no action is taken for a period of time after the fuel filler flap is unlocked.
- When the fuel filler flap is manually opened and closed, and no action is taken for a period of time.

⚠ Warning!

Vehicle fuel is volatile and highly flammable and explosive. Improper operation can cause fires or even explosions. When refueling, it is necessary to always pay attention to:

- Turn off the engine and exit the READY state of the vehicle before refueling.
- Keep the vehicle away from sparks.
- Do not make or answer phone calls.
- When refueling on your own, you need to first eliminate the static electricity on your hands by pressing the destaticizing button of the fuel dispenser before proceeding with the operation.

- If the vehicle catches fire while refueling, it is strictly prohibited to remove the fuel pump hose. The fuel pump must be immediately turned off or the petrol station staff must be notified to cut off the fuel flow and immediately move to a safe area.
- Add fuel until the first time the auto shut off mechanism is triggered. If you continue to add fuel it may cause fuel spillage.
- Overfilling may cause fuel to splash onto the vehicle, which can corrode the paint surface, irritate the skin, and even cause a fire. When fuel splashes out, it is necessary to wipe and clean it as quickly as possible. Seek medical attention immediately if fuel sprayed onto the skin continues to irritate after cleaning.
- Strictly follow other precautions posted by the petrol station.

Fuel information

- Only high-quality unleaded gasoline with a minimum octane rating of RON 95 can be used. E5 and E10 ethanol-blended petrol are permitted.
- RON 95 unleaded gasoline is recommended for Lotus sports cars.

It is suggested to use high-quality fuel that contains the appropriate cleaning agents to achieve excellent performance and emission control.

! Caution!

- Only unleaded petrol must be used.
- The vehicle cannot operate on diesel fuel, and ensure that the correct fuel nozzle is selected before refueling. Costs incurred for fuel system draining and cleaning will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Key introduction

Card key



Exterior card key sensing area

Unlock: if the vehicle is locked, unlock by holding the card key close to the exterior key sensing area.

Lock: if the vehicle is unlocked with all doors (including the bonnet, tailgate) closed, hold the card key close to the exterior key sensing area to lock.

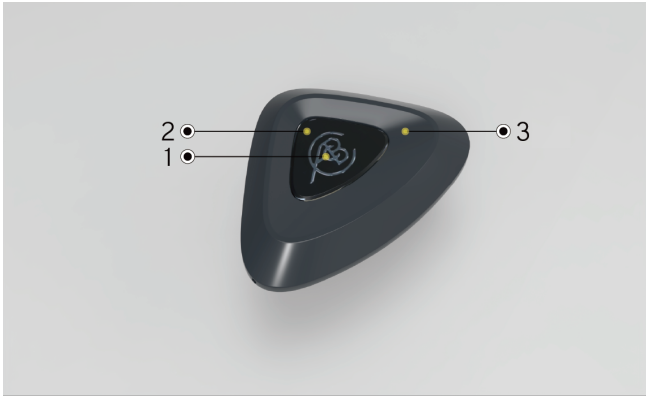
Caution!

The card key may be damaged if bent or exposed to strong magnetic fields.

Note!

- When using the card key to unlock/lock the vehicle, it is necessary to stay stationary and close to the exterior card key induction area.
- If the card key induction area is contaminated by ice, frost and dirt, this may affect the card key sensing, and it may not be possible to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- The function of the card key may be affected in low or high temperatures. If the vehicle is not unlocked successfully, please try again by moving the card key away from the vehicle completely and then place the card key up close to the induction area. If the vehicle still cannot be unlocked, please contact your Lotus retailer.
- Please contact your Lotus retailer if the card key is lost, or you wish to order an additional card key.
- A maximum of 6 card keys per vehicle are available.

Key fob*



Key fob

1. Single button
2. LED indicator
3. Bluetooth antenna

Carry the key fob within certain distance from the car, to achieve the following functions:

- When the vehicle is unlocked and all four doors are closed, briefly press the single button once to lock the vehicle.

- When the vehicle is locked, press and release the single button to unlock the vehicle.

ⓘ Note!

- If the remote key is unresponsive, adjust your grip to avoid covering the bluetooth antenna and try again.
- To change the lock or unlock status of the vehicle, allow a brief time period between single button presses. Pressing the single button immediately after pressing it to either lock or unlock the vehicle will not change the lock or unlock status of the vehicle.
- After the **2-step unlocking** (p.69) function is activated, press and release the single button once to unlock the driver door, and then press the single button again to unlock the vehicle.

- When the vehicle is unlocked and the all doors are closed, press and release and then hold the single button immediately to lock the vehicle while closing the windows completely.

ⓘ Note!

When the **Auto close windows on lock** (p.78) setting is opened, press the single button to lock the vehicle and the windows will automatically close completely.

- When the vehicle is locked, press and release and then hold the single button immediately to unlock the vehicle while opening the windows completely.

- When the vehicle is locked, press and hold the single button to activate the car search function.

⚠ Caution!

Do not modify or tap the key fob, otherwise it may affect the key function.

ⓘ Note!

- The distance at which the key fob can be detected by the car may be reduced due to being close to buildings, structures or other environmental conditions.
- The key fob is provided with a power saving mode. When the vehicle detects that the key fob is nearby, the proximity unlocking function will be disabled temporarily. It is necessary to press the single button to lock/unlock the vehicle.
- The key fob enters the power saving mode after being out of the sensing range of the vehicle or after a period of inactivity.

Replacement of key fob battery*

Please replace the key fob battery in time when the following situations occur:

- The key fob indicator is illuminated for a period of time when the lock/unlock button is pressed.

- When the vehicle is in READY mode, the driver display panel displays a low key battery prompt.

When replacing the key fob battery, be sure to follow these steps:

1. Insert a small bladed tool (not equipped with the vehicle) into the key fob battery removal hole and push to unlock the battery lock.



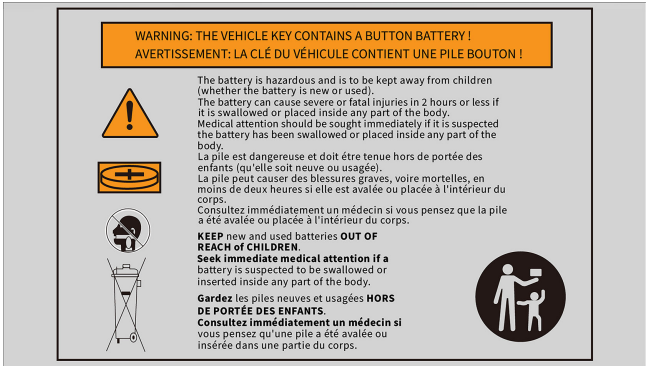
2. Remove the cover on the back of the key.



3. Use a small bladed tool (not included in the vehicle) to insert into the gap to lift the battery. The recommended new battery type is: CR2032.



4. When installing the cover plate on the back of the key, press hard against the clip to tighten it.



Button battery warning sign

⚠ Warning!

- The battery of the key fob is relatively small, so please keep the battery out of the reach of children to prevent children from accidentally swallowing it, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Be sure to dispose of used batteries in accordance with local regulations. Improper disposal of used batteries can damage the environment and endanger human health.
- Remove and immediately recycle or dispose of used batteries according to local regulations and keep away from children. Do NOT dispose of batteries in household trash or incinerate.
- Even used batteries may cause severe injury or death.
- Call a local poison control centre for treatment information.
- Non-rechargeable batteries are not to be recharged.
- Do not force discharge, recharge, disassemble, heat above manufacturer's specified temperature rating or incinerate. Doing so may result in injury due to venting, leakage or explosion resulting in chemical burns.
- Ensure the batteries are installed correctly according to polarity (+ and -).
- Remove and immediately recycle or dispose of batteries from key fob not used for an extended period of time according to local regulations.

- If the key fob does not close securely, stop using the key fob, remove the batteries, and keep them away from children.

Caution!

When replacing the battery, static electricity may damage the key fob. Please take the following preventive measures:

- Please wash and dry your hands before replacing the battery.
- Avoid replacing the battery in the car.
- When replacing the battery, you must keep the environment dry and clean. Moisture and grease can cause degradation of the battery and affect its service life.
- When installing the cover on the back of the key, be careful not to damage or deform it.
- When installing the battery, ensure to identify the positive and negative poles of the battery.

Digital key

The mobile phone digital key contains some functions of the card key and the key fob.

Only one owner user digital key can be paired to each vehicle, and the owner user can share the digital key via mobile wallet APP.

Note!

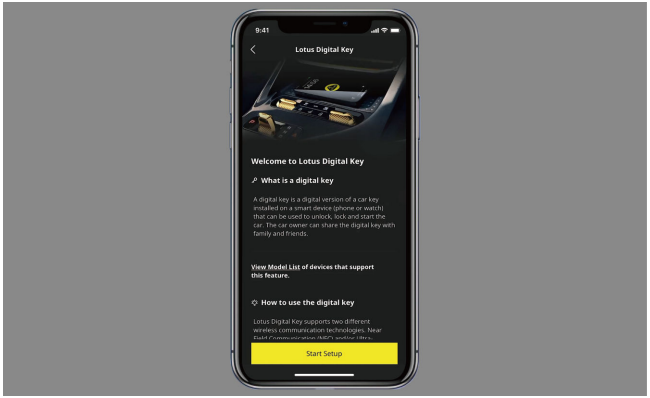
- If the phone runs out of battery and automatically shuts down, it can still be used for a period of time (subject to the actual condition of the mobile phone).
- The digital key cannot be used if your phone is turned off.
- Digital keys are only supported on mobilephones using the iOS operating system at this time.
- Some models of mobile phones are unable to create UWB digital keys.

Creating a NFC digital key with Lotus APP

Creating a NFC digital key on a mobile phone must be performed in the car.

Open the Lotus APP and create a digital key on your phone in the following steps:

1. In the Lotus APP, select **More APP** and click **Digital key** .
2. Keep the key fob in the car or the card key within the wireless charging induction area, and then remove the card key.
3. Place the mobile phone in the wireless charging induction area and wait for a prompt on the mobile phone and the centre screen display for successful creation.
4. Follow the prompts on the mobile phone to save the digital key to the mobile wallet APP.



ⓘ Note!

According to the mobile phone security policy, when using the NFC digital key to unlock and start, it may be necessary to double-click the side button of the phone and select the car key card in the phone wallet for identity authentication.

Creating an UWB digital key with Lotus APP

Creating an UWB digital key on a mobile phone must be performed in the car.

Open the Lotus APP and create a digital key on your phone in the following steps:

1. In the Lotus APP, select **More APP** and click **Digital key** .
2. Keep the key fob in the car or the card key within the wireless charging induction area.
3. After the prompt for successful creation is shown on the mobile phone and the centre screen display, save the digital key to the mobile wallet APP.

ⓘ Note!

If the UWB digital key does not work properly, it may be related to the status of your mobile phone, you can try the following operations:

1. Check if **Face ID** pops up on your phone.
2. Disable **Comfort entry** and enable it again in the mobile wallet APP.
3. Disable **Bluetooth** and enable it again in the phone **settings** .
4. Ensure your mobile phone operating system is updated to the latest version.
5. Disconnect other Bluetooth devices.
6. Your mobile phone needs to open **phone settings** - **Privacy and Security** - **Location services** - **system service** - **Network and Wireless** .

Create a digital key with mail link

You can use an email URL to create a digital key by following these steps:

1. Place the key fob in the car or the card key within the wireless charging induction area, and then remove the card key.
2. With the phone you intend to pair the digital key, click on the link for digital key creation in the pairing email.
3. Follow the prompts to complete the pairing, and then check the digital key in the mobile wallet APP.

ⓘ Note!

To create a digital key, park your vehicle in a safe place with good network signal strength before operating.

Create a digital key using a QR code (iOS device)

You can use a QR code to create a digital key by following these steps:

1. Place the key fob in the car or the card key within the wireless charging induction area, and then remove the card key.
2. Click the icon in the centre screen display, select **Vehicle** , click to enter the digital key management interface, and click to view **How to create** and scan the QR code with phone.
3. Follow the prompts to complete the pairing, and then check the digital key in the mobile wallet APP.

ⓘ Note!

To create a digital key, park your vehicle in a safe place with good network signal strength before operating.

Sharing digital keys with mobile phone

After the main user successfully creates a digital key, they can select the sharing function in the mobile wallet application to share the digital key with others. The digital key only supports sharing between iPhones.

ⓘ Note!

- The total number of card keys, physical key, and digital keys shall not exceed 12.
- Using the digital key requires NFC, Bluetooth and positioning functions to be enabled on the mobile phone.
- Unlocking via the shared mobile digital key for the first time may require a longer waiting time. Please pay attention to the prompts on the mobile phone.

Deleting digital key

You can delete a digital key in the following ways.

Delete a digital key on the mobile phone:

- The owner user can delete his/her own digital key and the shared digital keys through the mobile wallet APP.
- The owner user can delete all the digital keys using the Lotus APP.
- If your digital key is shared by others, you can also delete it from your mobile wallet APP.

Delete a digital key on the centre screen display:

Click the icon in the centre screen display, select **Vehicle** , and click to enter the digital key management interface. Click delete digital keys to delete all the digital keys with one click, or delete the owner user digital key or a shared digital key individually.

ⓘ Note!

- Before selling your vehicle, it is recommended that you remove the digital key from your Lotus APP or car.
- If you are a certified used car owner, the original owner's digital key will automatically become invalid and you need to re-bind the digital key.

Digital key permission transfer

If the main user changes to a new phone and the digital key has not been deleted from the original phone, the new phone can be used to log in to the Lotus APP, click on **More APPs** , and then click on **Digital Key** . The Lotus APP will initiate the deletion of the original digital key and activate the digital key on the new phone.

ⓘ Note!

- When transferring digital key permissions, please park the car in a safe place with good / secure wireless location before proceeding.
- When transferring digital key permissions, please hold your phone inside the car for operation.

Doors

2-step unlocking

Tap the icon in the centre screen display, select **Vehicle** , and click to activate the 2-step unlock function.

With this function activated, press and release the lock/unlock button of the key fob once to unlock the driver door, and press and release the button again to unlock all doors.

ⓘ Note!

- After the 2-step unlock function is activated, you can unlock the driver door to enter the vehicle and press the central unlock switch on the tunnel console to unlock the vehicle.

- Unlocking the vehicle with key fob is described in **Key fob** (p.61).

Walk–up unlock

Tap the icon in the centre screen display, select **Vehicle** , and tap to activate the Walk-up unlock feature.



When the Walk-up unlock feature is turned off, carrying the key fob and touching the driver's door handle switch can lock or unlock the vehicle.

When the Walk-up unlock feature is turned on, carrying the key fob within a certain range of the vehicle will automatically unlock the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to carry a valid key with you. Leaving a valid key in the car will prevent the vehicle from automatically locking, and all doors, windows, and controls will be in an operable state, which may result in theft and accidents.
- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle unattended.
- Please make sure the vehicle is fully locked before leaving.

! Caution!

If the door is frozen or blocked, do not vigorously pull or tap the door handle, as this may damage it.

ⓘ Note!

- When locking the vehicle with another valid key, the key left inside the vehicle will be disabled until the vehicle is unlocked.
- After locking the vehicle, it can be confirmed that the vehicle is fully locked if all door handles are retracted.
- The vehicle cannot be locked when one or more doors are not fully closed.
- You need to actively turn off the walk-up on unlock function to avoid accidentally unlocking the vehicle when carrying the key fob near the vehicle.

Walk-away lock

You can click on the ⚙ icon in the centre screen display, select **Vehicle** , and click to activate the **Walk-away lock** function.

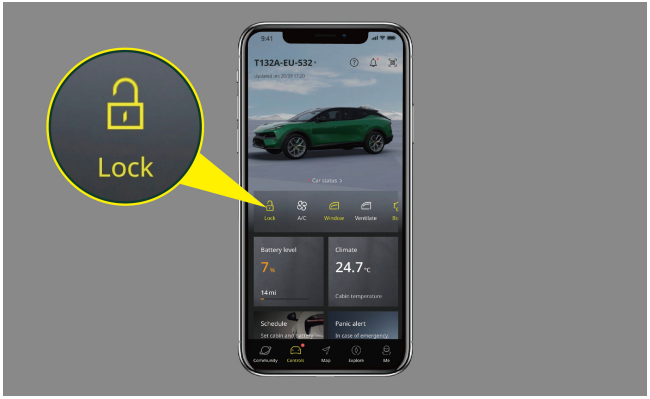
When the walk-away lock function is turned on and all doors are closed, carry the key fob away from the vehicle within a certain range, and the vehicle will automatically lock.

⚠ Warning!

- When using the walk-away lock function, please place the car key separately and carry it with you to avoid signal interference that may cause the lock to be unsuccessful.
- Do not leave the elderly, children or pets alone in the car to avoid accidents.
- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to carry a valid key with you. Leaving a valid key in the car will prevent the vehicle from automatically locking, and all doors, windows, and controls will be in an operable state, which may result in theft and accidents.
- Please make sure that the vehicle is fully locked before leaving.

Remote locking/unlocking via mobile APP

You can refresh the real-time status of the door lock in the controls interface of the mobile APP. Click **Lock** in the mobile APP to active remote lock/unlock. You can know the status of car lock by the colour of the **Lock** switch and prompt information.



ⓘ Note!

- The status of door/window/central lock is automatically updated regularly. You can also get it actively.
- When a previous lock request is being executed, the mobile APP cannot execute a new one.
- If you do not open the door within a certain period after the remote unlock, the vehicle will be re-locked. You can check the vehicle locking/unlocking status on the mobile APP.

Activating super lock

When the super lock is activated, the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

When the vehicle is in personalization mode, the driver display will display “inactive”. When there is no one in the vehicle, the super lock can be activated in the following two ways:

- All vehicle doors (including the tailgate and hood) are closed, and the vehicle has been locked for a short time period, the super lock for front and rear doors will be activated.
- To acitvate super-lock, ensure the vehicle is in personalised mode, all display screens are inactive, the vehicle is unoccupied, and all doors including the tailgate and bonnet are closed, and then lock the vehicle.

Once the super lock is activated, the vehicle can be unlocked by using the valid key.

When the vehicle's life detection and care system detects that there are children or pets in the vehicle, the super lock will not be activated after the vehicle is locked, and the primary warning will be sent for a short time to remind you to not leave children or pets in the vehicle.

- If you do not unlock the vehicle to eliminate the warning, the warning will be sent again after a short time period.
- If you use a valid key to unlock the vehicle and lock it again, the vehicle's life protection function will still detect the presence of children or pets in the car, and the vehicle will automatically sound a higher level alarm (continuous alarm).
- If the vehicle still gives warning after confirming that there are no children or pets in the vehicle, please contact your Lotus retailer.

Reduced guard mode

Activating reduced guard mode can temporarily disable the anti-theft functions such as super lock, inside mobilization detection and anti-roll detection alarm in any of the following conditions:

- When the driver needs to leave the vehicle momentarily with a living being, such as a child or pet left in the vehicle, and the vehicle needs to be locked from the outside.
- When the vehicle needs to be repaired or towed, and the vehicle needs to be locked from the outside.

Click the icon in the centre screen display, select the **Vehicle** , and click to activate the reduced guard.

⚠ Warning!

Do not leave the vehicle for long periods of time if children or pets are left in the vehicle.

ⓘ Note!

- After turning on the low-level protection function and locking the vehicle, please pay attention to the safety and security

of the vehicle and as well as any personal possesions in the vehicle.

- Each time the vehicle is powered on, the low-level protection function will automatically disable.

Unlocking/locking doors from inside



Door switch

When the vehicle is in a locked (non-super lock) state, press the front door switch to unlock and open the corresponding front door. At the same time, the indicator on the central lock button will extinguish, and the driver display shows that the door is open.

When the vehicle is in a locked state, press the front door switch to unlock and open the corresponding front door. At the same time, the indicator on the central lock button will extinguish, and the driver display shows that the door is open.

When the vehicle is in a locked state, press the rear door switch to unlock the corresponding rear door. Press the switch again to open the door.



Central lock on tunnel console

1. Central unlock switch
2. Central lock switch

The central lock switch is located at the front of the centre console and the vehicle can be locked/unlocked by pressing the central lock/unlock switch.

ⓘ Note!

- When the vehicle is moving and the door is locked, pressing the door switch cannot unlock the door.
- When the vehicle is being unlocked, the flush door handle will extend.
- In the event of vehicle collision, all doors will unlock.
- In the event of a vehicle collision, if the door handle fails to pop out electrically, press the front end of the handle to lift its rear end, then pull the lifted part to manually deploy the handle and open the door.

Opening/closing doors from outside



Flush door handle

The flush door handles will automatically extend when the vehicle is unlocked using the keys. Pull the handle to open the door.

Tap the plate or handle using gentle force only to free the handle if it will not extend because of ice or snow.

⚠ Warning!

- Be sure to carry the valid key with you when leaving the vehicle. Leaving a valid key in the vehicle will leave all doors, windows and controls in a working condition, which may cause a dangerous, unauthorized or accidental use.
- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle unattended.

- Please make sure the vehicle is fully locked before leaving.

Caution!

If the door is frozen or blocked, do not vigorously pull or tap the door handle, as this may damage it.

Note!

- When locking the vehicle with another valid key, the key left inside the vehicle will be disabled until the vehicle is unlocked.
- After locking the vehicle, it can be confirmed that the vehicle is fully locked if all door handles are retracted.
- The vehicle cannot be locked when one or more doors are not fully closed.
- You need to actively turn off the walk-up on unlock function to avoid accidentally unlocking the vehicle when carrying the key fob near the vehicle.

Closing by auto suction*

Once a door contacts its latch when closing, the door, will be automatically pulled into its fully locked position. During the pulling and closing of the door, press the door switch or pull the flush door handle, and the pulling will stop.



Closing by auto suction

Warning!

During the automatic suction for closing, make sure that the door will not pinch any part of your body or other items to prevent pinching injury or damage.

Note!

If the suction lock fails, the door will not be automatically engage to the fully locked position, and the driver display will display relevant fault information.

Auto re-lock

After the vehicle has been unlocked and no door has been opened for a period of time, the vehicle will be automatically re-locked.

Auto lock while driving

With all doors (including the bonnet, tailgate, charging port cover) closed and the vehicle speed over a certain speed limit, the indicator on the central lock button will be illuminated to indicate that the vehicle is locked.

Collision unlocking

In the event of a collision, the vehicle automatically activates the central locking system and unlocks the four doors.

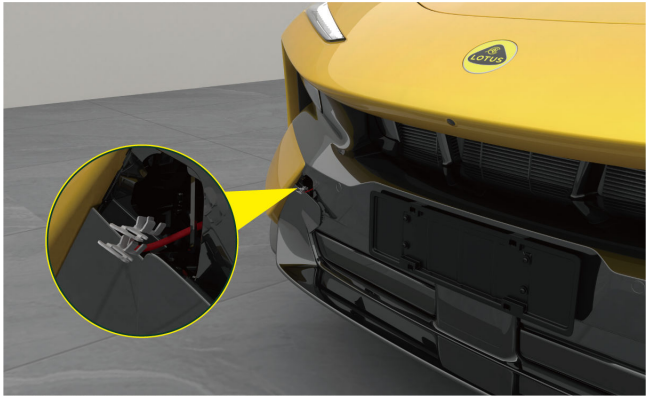
Emergency door unlocking from outside

In the event of a battery power loss, emergency unlocking can be achieved by using the tailgate opening switch or external power supply.



Emergency unlocking via tailgate opening switch

When using the tailgate opening switch for emergency unlocking, press and hold the switch for 5 seconds, and then use a valid key to unlock normally.



Emergency unlocking via external power supply

When a 12V external power supply is used for emergency unlocking, the doors can be unlocked using the following procedure:

1. Open the front bumper towing hook cover and pull out the external power wiring.
2. Connect the black wire fixed on the cover to the negative terminal of the external power supply, and the red wire to the positive terminal of the external power supply.
3. The driver's door will be unlocked automatically when carrying a valid key fob or UWB digital key. Either hold the NFC card or NFC digital key in proximity to the exterior key sensing area to unlock the driver's door.
4. After opening the door, disconnect the external power supply, load the external wire back into the towing hook cover, and close the cover.

Caution!

- When using an external power supply, please use a device with an output voltage ranging from 12.4V to 14.4V and equipped with overvoltage protection, overcurrent protection, short-circuit protection, and reverse connection protection functions.
- NEVER use external power supplies with a 24V voltage, other voltage platforms, or switchable voltage gears.
- Never use a lead-acid battery charger to charge the battery.

Note!

If neither of these methods allow access to the vehicle then please contact your Lotus retailer.

Emergency unlocking of doors from inside



Emergency handle

Pull the emergency handle in the door trim panel pocket to open the door.

ⓘ Note!

- When the child safety locks are activated, the rear doors cannot be opened using the emergency release lever, they can only be opened from outside the vehicle.
- After the central locking system locks the vehicle, the four doors cannot be opened using emergency handles.

Windows

Window anti-pinch function

If the window encounters an obstacle during the automatic closing, it will stop closing and automatically return to the position before closing.

When any door is opened, the corresponding side window will automatically drop a certain distance. When the door is closed, the window will close automatically.

ⓘ Note!

- If the front door and the corresponding window are closed, the window can be fully opened using the one-button lowering function, the corresponding window will rise for a certain distance when the door is opened. After the door is closed, the window will automatically fully lower.
- If the window automatically rises to a fully closed state after the door is opened, then do not close the door with any forces as this could result in damage to the vehicle. Please contact your Lotus retailer.

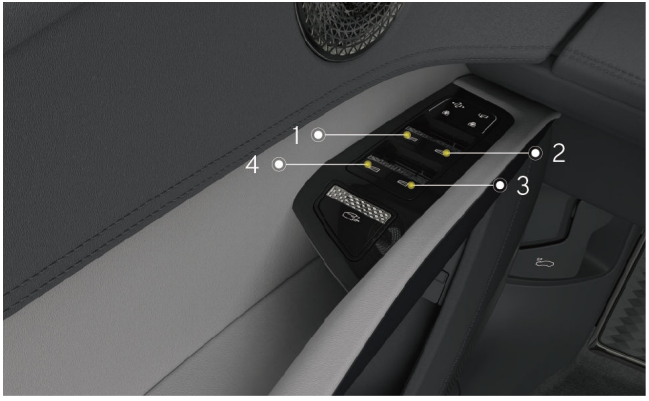
Auto close windows on lock

You can tap the icon on centre screen display and select **Vehicle** to turn on/off the **Auto close windows on lock** .

Note!

The windows will automatically close after the vehicle has been locked for more than 28 hours, or if the rain sensor detects rain, the windows will close immediately.

Window regulator switch



Window regulator switch on driver door trim panel

1. Left front window regulator switch
2. Right front window regulator switch
3. Right rear window regulator switch
4. Left rear window regulator switch

You can lift or lower all windows by operating the regulator switches on the driver door trim panel.

The window regulator switch has two positions, and you can control the windows as follows:

1. Manual up/down: pull up or press down to the first position, the windows will rise or lower; release the switch, the windows will stop moving.
2. Auto up/down: pull up or press down to the second position, the windows automatically go up/down. The window will stop moving if it is pulled up or pressed down again during movement.

Warning!

- When operating the window regulator switch, take care not to touch the door switch to avoid accidental unlocking of the door and causing personal injury or property damage.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, as they may inadvertently operate the window regulator switch and become injured by a moving window.

- Before closing the windows, it is important to ensure that all passengers, especially children, have no body parts protuding out of a window. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.
- For safety, it is recommended to lock the rear windows when a child is sitting in the rear seat. Refer to the **Child safety lock** (p.45).
- Pay attention to the to the window distance when opening and closing the door. Contact with the glass can lead to injuries.
- Do not operate the window regulator switch when the vehicle speed is too high.

ⓘ Note!

- The window regulator switches on the rear door trim panels can be used to lift or lower the rear left and right windows.
- Please remove any snow and ice from the windows before using the window regulator switches to avoid the window being stuck or unable to open or close normally during the movement.

Window opening/closing via mobile APP



Tap the window switch on the mobile APP to fully open or close the windows. Before the full opening or closing of windows, the windows will not stop moving even if you tap the window switch on the mobile APP again.

⚠ Warning!

Do not activate the remote window opening and closing if the vehicle is not in your line of sight.

Window opening/closing via central lock



Central lock at the front of tunnel console

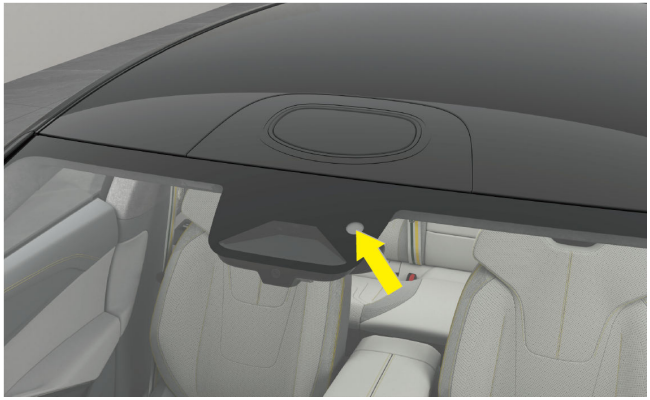
1. Central unlock switch
2. Central lock switch

The central lock/unlocking switches are located at the front of the centre console, and control the simultaneous rising and lowering of all windows.

When the central unlock switch is pressed and held, all windows will be fully opened simultaneously. Press the switch again during the Window lowering, the window will stop the movement.

When the central lock switch is pressed and held, all windows will be fully closed simultaneously. Press the switch again during the window raising, the window will stop the movement. If any obstacles are detected during the window raising procedure, then the anti-pinch function will be activated.

Auto rising in rain



Rain and light sensor module (RLSM)

All windows will automatically close when the Rain and light sensor module (RLSM) at the front windscreen detects rain.

Self-learning of one-button rise and anti-pinch function

If the one-button rise and anti-pinch function fails because of a power outage or window motor repair, you can try the following self-learning procedure:

1. Pull up the window regulator switch and hold it for 5 seconds after the window raises to the top position.
2. Press the window regulator switch and hold it for 5 seconds until the window is lowered to the bottom to complete the self-learning.

⚠ Warning!

- Before closing the windows, make sure that no one or object is in the way of window closing, otherwise, it may cause personal injury and car damage!
- In case that there is a child in the vehicle, the child safety lock shall be activated, and the rear window regulator switch shall be disabled to prevent the child from being injured due to misuse.

ⓘ Note!

If the one-button rise and anti-pinch function fails, the self-learning procedure should be performed as soon as possible to prevent any possibel pinching injuries or window damage.

Bonnet

Opening of bonnet

To prevent damage to the bonnet or windscreen wipers, please make sure that the wiper arms are not lifted before opening the bonnet.

1. The bonnet release handle is located under the driver side instrument panel and can be identified by the bonnet opening symbol. Open the driver door to access the handle. To fully unlatch the bonnet, the handle must be pulled twice.



Bonnet opening handle

2. From outside of the vehicle, after partially raising the front edge the bonnet will then fully open.



Opening of bonnet

Bonnet closing

1. Lower the bonnet gently until the bonnet contacts.
2. To fully close apply downward pressure with both hands at the positions shown in image below. Check to make sure the bonnet is latched completely.



Bonnet closing

⚠ Warning!

- To ensure driving safety, make sure that the bonnet is completely closed, otherwise the unintentional opening of the bonnet while the vehicle is driving will block the line of sight.
- If the gas struts that hold the bonnet open fail, you or others could be seriously injured. Periodically visually inspect the gas struts for signs of wear, cracks or other damage. Make sure that the bonnet is supported with sufficient force. If the gas struts no longer hold the bonnet open, do not operate, and contact your Lotus retailer.

Caution!

- Before closing the bonnet, please ensure that there are no obstacles in the way that would prevent the bonnet from closing.
- Do not forcefully close the bonnet.
- Do not press the bonnet with one hand, as this may cause the bonnet to be dented or damaged.

Note!

When the indicator on the driver display is illuminated, please ensure that all doors, including the tailgate and bonnet, are fully closed.

Tailgate

Opening/closing of tailgate

The tailgate can be opened or closed in several ways. Whilst closing, the tailgate will make a beeping sound until it has stopped moving:

- Click the tailgate switch on centre screen display.
- Press and hold the tailgate switch on driver door (p.85).
- Press the open/close switch on the tailgate (a valid key must be detected).
- With a valid key fob with you, perform a foot movement at the tailgate sensing area to open the tailgate.

Caution!

- If during opening, the tailgate movement is very slow, stalls, or even starts to close, then this indicates that the system is reacting to either excessive weight on the tailgate or even a possible support strut failure. Please take care to remove any excess weight (such as snow). If the symptoms persist, then contact your Lotus retailer before using the power operated tailgate.
- Before opening the tailgate, ensure there is enough space above and behind the tailgate to avoid damaging it or other items when opening it.
- Using manual force to try and open of close the tailgate during the powered operation, may result in damage to the system. Allow the power operation to complete.
- Do not push or pull on the support power struts. This may cause damage to the vehicle.
- Driving with the tailgate open and unsecured can cause damage to the components of the power operated tailgate.

ⓘ Note!

If the vehicle is locked, the direction indicator lamps will flash once, indicating that the tailgate is locked.

Opening/closing of tailgate using the centre screen display

Tap the icon to enter the garage space interface, then click on the icon, and the tailgate will automatically open or close.

Driver's door tailgate switch



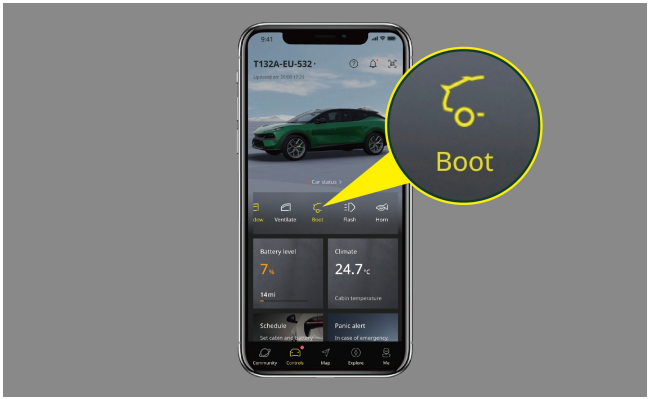
Tailgate switch on driver door

When the tailgate is closed, you can press and hold the tailgate switch on the driver door to unlock and fully open the tailgate.

When the tailgate is open, you can press and hold the tailgate switch on the driver door to close the tailgate automatically.

When the tailgate is in motion, pressing of the tailgate switch will stop the tailgate from moving, and holding the switch will make the tailgate move in the opposite direction.

Unlocking tailgate via mobile APP



When the vehicle is locked, you can tap the tailgate switch on the mobile APP to unlock the tailgate.

Opening/closing of tailgate by kicking action*



Tailgate kick induction zone

Some vehicle models carry a key fob or digital key with you and do a kicking action in the sensing area of the tailgate, and the tailgate will be automatically opened/closed.

ⓘ Note!

- If the vehicle is locked, the direction indicator lamps will flash once, indicating that the tailgate is locked.
- Keep the tailgate induction area clean. If the induction area is covered with snow, ice, dirt, etc., the kick open/closing function may not work properly.
- If the tailgate has failed to open or close, please re-attempt or contact your Lotus retailer if you experience persistent opening problems.

Tailgate opening/closing switch



Tailgate opening switch

With the vehicle unlocked or with a key fob, the tailgate can be fully opened by pressing the tailgate opening switch.

ⓘ Note!

If you have set the tailgate opening height, the tailgate will automatically open to the set height.



Tailgate closing switch

Press the tailgate closing switch, and the tailgate will automatically close.

Tailgate anti-pinch function

The anti-pinch function can prevent personal injury or damage to objects when opening/closing the tailgate if an object is detected that will obstruct tailgate movement.

- Opening: a warning noise will sound, and the tailgate will stop rising.
- Closing: a warning noise will sound, and the tailgate will stop and rise to a set height.
- If the vehicle starts moving during tailgate opening/closing, the tailgate movement will stop and remain in that position.

Emergency opening of tailgate from the boot

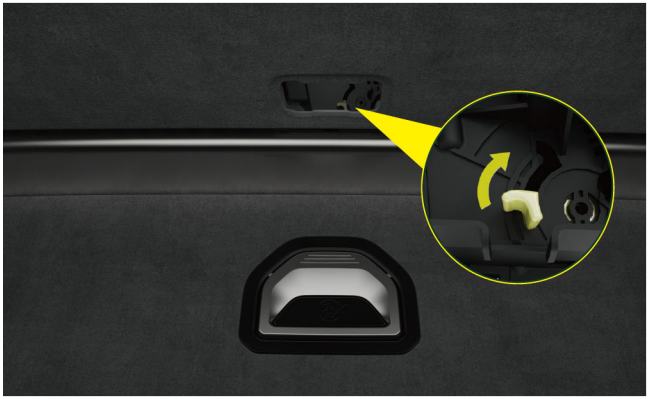
In event of entrapment in the trunk, you can try to open the tailgate from the boot.

1. Prise the top edge of the emergency unlocking lever protective cover outwards to remove.



Emergency unlocking of tailgate protective cover

2. Pull the emergency locking lever fully upwards to unlock the tailgate, and push the tailgate to open.



Emergency unlocking of tailgate control lever

Setting tailgate opening height

You can set the tailgate opening height by following the steps below:

1. Manually open the tailgate to the desired height.
2. Press and hold the tailgate closing switch until you hear an audible signal, which indicates that the current opening height of the tailgate has been set as the opening height.

⚠ Warning!

- To avoid injury when operating the tailgate, it is important to make sure no person is obstructing the tailgate opening or closing movement.
- Ensure that the tailgate is closed before driving to avoid injury to the vehicle occupants.

! Caution!

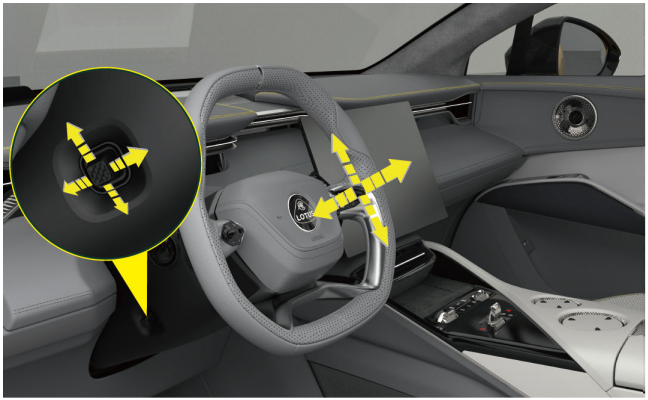
Applying excessive force when manually opening or closing the tailgate may result in the tailgate becoming damaged or malfunctioning.

ⓘ Note!

You can also manually open the tailgate to the highest position, and press and hold the tailgate switch until you hear an audible signal to restore the tailgate opening height.

Steering wheel

Adjustment of steering wheel



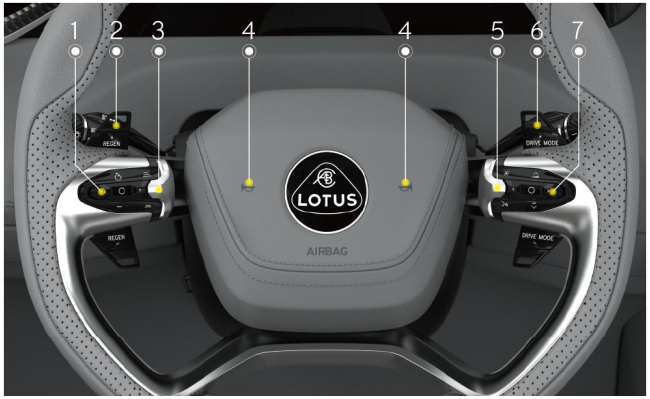
Steering wheel adjustment

With the vehicle in ignition mode, the steering wheel can be adjusted for both height and depth by moving the adjustment button on the left of the steering column in the corresponding direction.

⚠ Warning!

Ensure that the steering wheel is in the correct position before driving. Never adjust the steering wheel whilst driving.

Buttons on steering wheel



Buttons on steering wheel

1. Left multi-function button
2. Energy recovery paddle
3. Cruise control following distance switch
4. Horn
5. Menu/voice switch

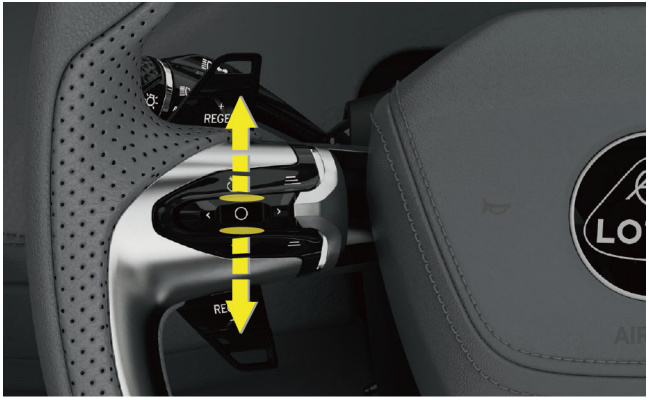
6. Driving mode paddle
7. Right multi-function button

Steering wheel button operation



Short press the left multifunction button

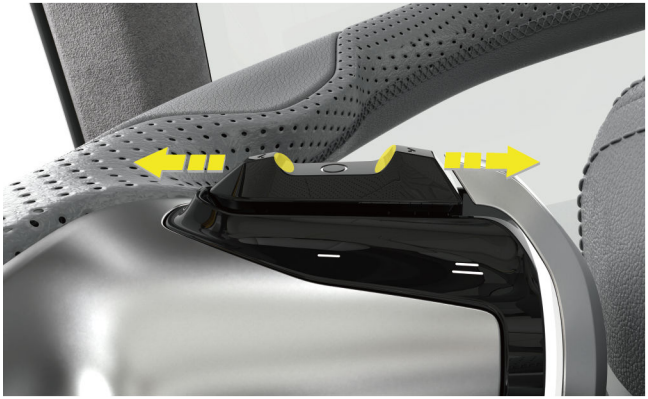
Press the left multi-function button: place your thumb in the middle of the multi-function button, and press the button until there is a crisp sound.



Toggle the left multifunction button

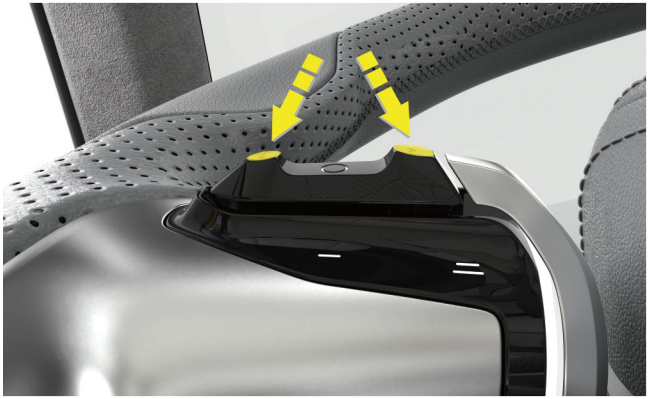
Toggle the left multi-function button up and down: place your thumb in the middle of the lower or upper part of the multi-function button, and toggle it up or down until a crisp sound is heard.

There are two methods to move the left multi-function button left and right:



Method 1

Place your thumb in the middle of the multi-function button, and toggle it left and right until a crisp sound is heard.



Method 2

Place your thumb on the raised position of the multi-function button, and toggle it down at an angle until a crisp sound is heard.



Toggle the left multifunction button

Toggle the following distance button up and down: place your thumb on the lower or upper part of the following distance button, and toggle the knob of the button or down until a crisp sound is heard.



Toggle the energy recovery paddle

Toggle the energy recovery paddle up: put your finger under the paddle, and toggle up the paddle until a crisp sound is heard.

ⓘ Note!

- The buttons on the right side of the steering wheel can be operated in the same way as those on the left side.
- Please put your fingers in an appropriate position to avoid inoperation or difficult operation of the buttons.

Steering wheel button customization

You may set the shortcut function for the "*" multi-function button on the right side of the steering wheel via the centre screen display.

Tap the icon on the centre screen display, select **Vehicle** , tap **Custom button** , then choose your target function.

Steering wheel heating

Manual steering wheel heating

Tap the temperature value in the centre screen display to switch to the air conditioning control interface, then tap the icon to turn on the steering wheel heating to level 3 by default. Repeat taps on the level to lower the level further until the heating function stops.

Automatic steering wheel heating

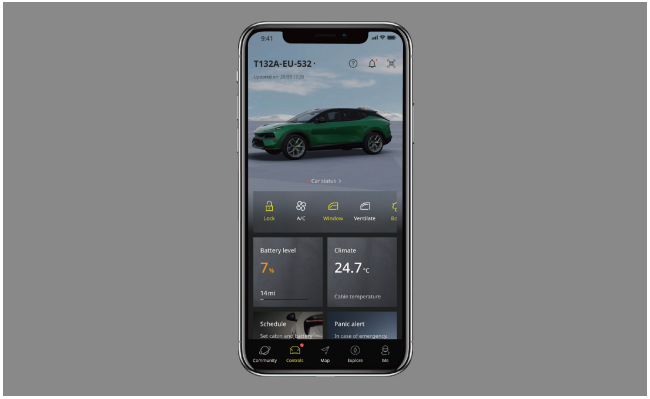
You can tap the **Auto-start steering wheel heating** button in the air conditioning setting interface of the centre screen display to turn it on or off.

With the automatic steering wheel heating function on, the steering wheel heating function will be activated automatically when the outside temperature is too low. The heating function will be turned off after it heats up to the target temperature and maintains that temperature for a period of time.

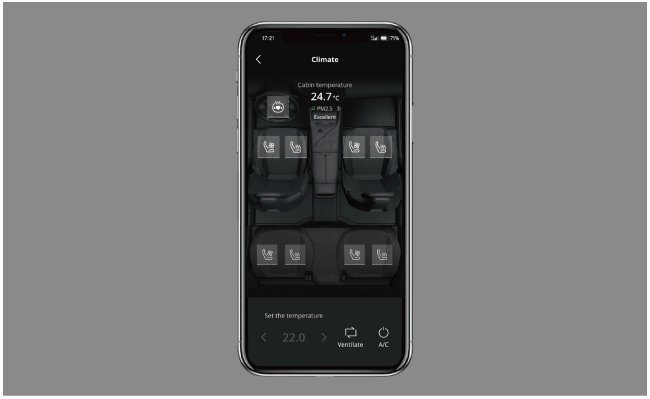
ⓘ Note!

- Steering wheel auto-start heating is off by default.
- In the process of automatic heating, you can click icon on the front climate control interface to turn off the steering wheel heating once.

Remote control of steering wheel heating



Switch to the climate control interface through the **Climate** on the mobile APP interface.



Tap the icon to turn on the steering wheel heating. Tap the icon to turn off the steering wheel heating.

Combination instrument

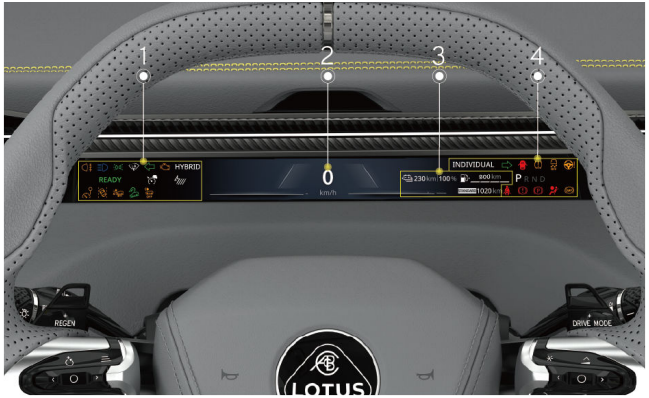
Instrument overview

The instrument panel display can be viewed by both the driver and front passenger, showing functions and options such as vehicle information, status monitoring, warning indicators and driving modes.

ⓘ Note!

Depending on vehicle options, market and software levels, the display shown below may be slightly different compared to your vehicle.

Overview of driver side instrument cluster



Combination instrument

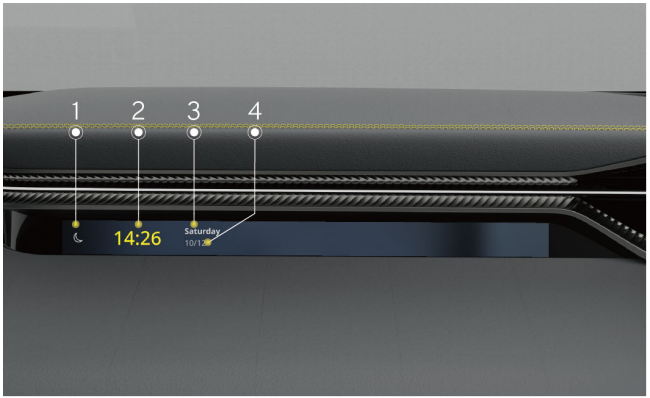
1. Left indicator display area: displays relevant information such as external light status, fault alerts, driver assistance systems, and energy drive mode.
2. Speed: displays the current speed of the vehicle.

3. Range information: displays the percentage of remaining power of the high-voltage battery, remaining fuel quantity, pure electric range, pure fuel range, combined range, and driving range display type. You can also use the voice function to query information such as fuel level and comprehensive cruising range.
4. Right indicator display area: displays information such as gear, driving mode, and active safety systems.

ⓘ Note!

When the high-voltage battery state of charge is less than 20%, the state of charge low indicator will illuminate yellow.

Passenger screen display



Overview of passenger screen

1. Screen OFF switch
2. Time
3. Day
4. Date

After the vehicle is powered on, you can tap the screen OFF switch or on the screen as required to turn off or activate the passenger screen. You can also click on the icon in the centre screen display, select to **Display** , and click to **Open the passenger screen** or **OFF the passenger screen** switch on this interface to activate or deactivate the passenger screen.

Tap the passenger screen display, and slide the screen left and right to switch the multimedia content.

The passenger screen display shows safety information. When the front passenger seat belt is not fastened, the seat belt reminder and door opening warning will be given (p.245).

⚠ Warning!

The front passenger shall pay attention to the important reminder messages displayed on the passenger screen. Ignoring these messages may result in serious damage to the vehicle or personal injuru.

Check vehicle trip information

Press the TRIP button on the wiper lever to switch among mileage, Trip 1, and Trip 2; On the interface of Trip 1 or Trip 2, press and hold TRIP button again to reset Trip 1 or Trip 2.



TRIP button

To check the mileage and reset trip 1 or trip 2, operate as follows:

1. Press and release the TRIP button for the first time to check the mileage in the driver display.



Mileage

2. Press and release the TRIP button for the second time to check Trip 1 (mileage and average energy consumption) in the driver display; On the interface of Trip 1, press and hold the TRIP button again to reset Trip 1.



Trip 1 and average energy consumption

3. Press and release the TRIP button for the third time to check Trip 2 (mileage and average energy consumption) in the driver display; On the interface of Trip 2, press and hold the TRIP button again to reset Trip 2.



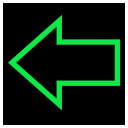
Trip 2 and average energy consumption

ⓘ Note!

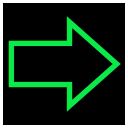
- The odometer mileage cannot be reset by operating the TRIP button.
- If the TRIP button is not operated after a short time period, the mileage interface will automatically exit.

Indicators and warning lamps

Indicator icon



Turn indicator: when you push the turn indicator switch downward, the left indicator flashes. When the hazard warning lights switch is turned on, the direction indicator lamps on both sides flash at the same time.



Turn indicator: when you push the turn indicator switch upward, the right indicator flashes. When the hazard warning lights switch is turned on, the direction indicator lamps on both sides flash at the same time.



High beam: when the high beam is turned on, this indicator is illuminated.



Adaptive driving beam (ADB): after the ADB is turned on but not activated, the white indicator light is illuminated.



Adaptive driving beam (ADB): when activated, the blue high beam indicator will be illuminated.



Rear fog lamp: when the rear fog light is turned on, this indicator is illuminated.



Position lamp: when the position light is turned on, this indicator is illuminated.



Wiper automatic wiping indicator: when the automatic wiping function is turned on, this indicator will be illuminated.



READY: when the vehicle is ready to go, this indicator is illuminated.



Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) off: when the ASLA is off, this indicator is illuminated.



Acoustic vehicle alerting system off: when acoustic vehicle alerting system is off, this indicator is illuminated.



Lane keep assist (LKA) off: when LKA is off, this indicator is illuminated.



Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) off: when AEB is off, this indicator is illuminated.



Hill descent control (HDC): after the HDC is turned on but not activated, this indicator is illuminated.



Hill descent control (HDC): when activated, the green indicator is illuminated.



Adaptive cruise control (ACC): this indicator will be illuminated in white when the ACC is ready to be activated.



Adaptive cruise control (ACC): this indicator will be illuminated when the ACC is active.



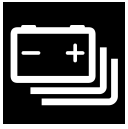
Highway assist (HWA)*: this indicator will be illuminated in white when the HWA is ready to be activated.



Highway assist (HWA)*: this indicator will be illuminated when the HWA is active.



Highway assist (HWA)*: this indicator will be illuminated when the steering assistance is not available.



High voltage battery capacity: when the high voltage battery capacity is normal, the white indicator is illuminated.



High voltage battery capacity: when the battery is low, the yellow indicator is illuminated.



Fuel level indicator light: when the vehicle's fuel level is normal, the white indicator light is on.



Fuel level indicator light: when the vehicle's fuel level is too low, this indicator light is on.



Door status: when any door is open, this indicator is illuminated.



Charging plug connection: when the charging plug is connected to the vehicle, this indicator is illuminated.



Child presence detection: this indicator is illuminated when the child presence detection function is turned off.



Drive power limit: this indicator is illuminated to indicate that the driving power is limited.



Electronic stability control (ESC) off: when the ESC is turned off, this indicator is illuminated.



Electronic parking brake (EPB): this indicator is illuminated when the EPB is turned on.



AUTO HOLD: when the AUTO HOLD is activated, this indicator is illuminated.



Energy recovery level: when the energy recovery function is turned off, this indicator is illuminated.



Energy recovery level: when the energy recovery level is in gear 1, this indicator is illuminated.



Energy recovery level: when the energy recovery level is in gear 2, this indicator is illuminated.



Energy recovery level: when the energy recovery level is in gear 3, this indicator is illuminated.



Parking power generation: when the parking power generation function is activated, the indicator light illuminates and displays the power generation output.



Low oil pressure: this indicator light illuminates when the engine oil pressure is low.



High coolant temperature: this indicator light illuminates when the engine is overheating.

Warning lamp symbols

⚠ Warning!

- To check all warning systems are operative, the warning lamps illuminate when the vehicle is started. The warning lamps extinguish when the self-test is complete.

- If the warning lamp stays on, it indicates that certain important functions have been disabled, or there is a serious malfunction in the vehicle that may cause a safety risk. Before driving, make sure the fault is cleared. If you do not understand the troubleshooting method, please contact your Lotus retailer.

Warning and fault messages will be displayed on the driver display or the central display, and some messages are accompanied by audible signals or the corresponding warning lights will illuminate.



Low beam failure: illuminates if a low beam lamp fails.



Adaptive front-lighting system failure: illuminates if the adaptive front-lighting system fails.



Adaptive driving beam failure: illuminates if the adaptive driving beam system fails.



High beam failure: illuminates if the high beam system fails.



Position lamp failure: illuminates if a position lamp fails.



Automatic speed limit alarm failure: This warning light will illuminate if the automatic speed limit alarm system fails.



Lane keep assist failure: illuminates if the Lane keep assist system is not available.



Autonomous emergency braking failure: this warning lamp will illuminate if the autonomous emergency braking system fails.



Hill descent control failure: this warning lamp will illuminate if the hill descent control system fails.



Adaptive cruise control: this indicator symbol will illuminate if adaptive cruise control system is not available.



Highway assist*: this indicator symbol will illuminate if the highway assist system is not available.



High voltage battery failure: illuminates if the high voltage battery system fails.



System failure: illuminates when the system fails. Please contact your Lotus retailer if illuminated.



Drive motor failure: illuminates if the drive motor fails.



Transmission failure: illuminates if the transmission performance is degraded.



Transmission failure: illuminates if the transmission fails.



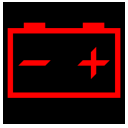
Driver Fatigue warning system malfunction: the warning lamp illuminates when a fault occurs within the driver fatigue warning system.



Rear collision warning failure: illuminates if the rear collision warning system fails.



Headlight levelling failure: illuminates if the headlight levelling system fails.



12V battery charging failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the charging system fails.



Air suspension system failure: Illuminates if the performance of air suspension system has temporarily fails or is impaired.



Air suspension system failure: illuminates if the air suspension fails and the system is disabled.



Tyre pressure monitoring system failure: illuminates if the pressure of one or more tyres is too low. In the event of a system failure the lamp will flash for 1 minute and then remain illuminated.



Electronic stability control failure: illuminates constantly if the electronic stability control system fails or flashes if activated.



Steering system failure: illuminated if the assisted performance of steering system is reduced/the assisted power is degraded.



Steering system failure: illuminated if the assisted power of steering system is degraded/not available.



Seat belt reminder: illuminates if a seat belt is not fastened.



Brake system failure: Illuminates if a general brake system faults or park brake system fault or excessive brake disc temperature occur is detected.



Brake system failure: illuminates if the brake fluid level is low, the brake fluid level sensor or the electronic brake force distribution system is faulty or the braking system is overheated.



Airbag failure: if the lamp illuminates whilst driving, a fault in the airbag or pretensioned seat belt system has been detected. Contact your Lotus retailer immediately for maintenance.



Anti-lock braking system failure: illuminates amber if the system is not operating. The vehicle's regular braking system will continue to operate but without the ABS function.



Engine malfunction Indicator lamp: illuminates if an emission-related malfunction is detected in the engine.



Engine system malfunction: illuminates if a malfunction in the engine system is detected.

Head-up display (HUD)

Head-up display (HUD) projects vehicle-related information onto front windscreen so that it is easier for the driver to obtain legible information rapidly during driving, thus improving driving safety.



The position of the HUD projection

Head-up display (HUD)

You can click the icon on the centre screen display, select **Display** to switch to the HUD setting interface, then click **HUD** to activate the head-up display function. After that, select HUD Adjustment to set the display layout and turn on or off the snow mode.

Note!

- After the HUD settings is activated on centre screen display, it needs to be set by the multi-function button on the right side of the steering wheel.
- You may not observe the HUD clearly if you are wearing polarized sunglasses. Please adjust the brightness of the HUD or take off your sunglasses.

HUD settings on steering wheel

- Press the Menu/Voice control button upward to activate HUD setting.



1. Menu/Voice button

2. Right multi-function button

- When HUD is off: press the multifunction button on the right side of the steering wheel to activate the HUD.

  When HUD is on: press the right multi-function button to access HUD setting.



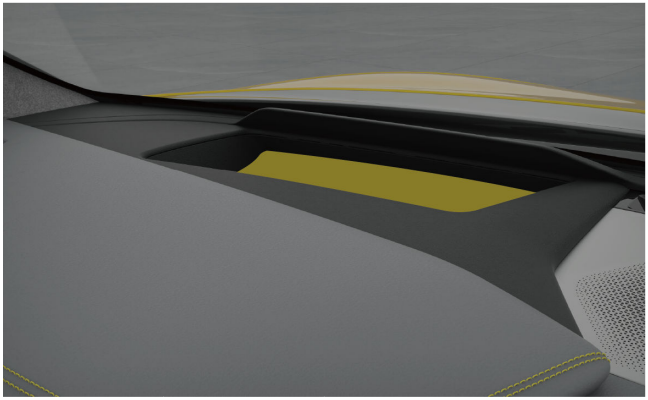
- Press the right multi-function button left and right to select the HUD ON/OFF, height, brightness, and snow mode respectively.

  In HUD adjustment interface, you can adjust the height and brightness of the HUD using the right multi-function button.



Cleaning and maintenance of HUD

Clean the inside of the windscreen to remove any dirt or film that may reduce the brightness or clarity of the HUD image. Clean the HUD lens with a soft cloth sprayed with glass cleaner. Wipe the lens gently and allow it to dry.



The location of the HUD

⚠ Warning!

- Before driving, make sure to check that the position and brightness of the HUD will not interfere with safe driving. Improper adjustment of the image position or brightness may obstruct the driver's field of vision and cause an accident, resulting in personal injury.
- Do not keep looking at HUD while driving, otherwise you may fail to see pedestrians and objects on the road ahead.

! Caution!

- Do not allow liquids to enter into the projector area as this may cause electrical failure.
- Do not place any objects or stickers on the projector or the projection area of the front windscreen, otherwise the HUD may not function properly to display.
- Do not touch the inside of the projector or throw objects into the projector as this may damage the HUD.

ⓘ Note!

- If the front windscreen needs to be replaced, please contact your Lotus retailer for replacement as soon as possible.
- The driver can turn on the snow mode when driving in snow or when the road surface is heavily reflective.

Lighting

External lighting control

Stalk switch

Rotate the ring on the stalk switch positioned on the left side of the steering wheel to select from the exterior light options.



Lighting switch



Low beam: The low beam, position lamps and rear licence plate lamps are illuminated in this position.



Auto light: The low beam headlights, position and rear number plate lamp automatically illuminate or extinguish depending on the ambient lighting conditions.



With parking mode (P) selected using the gear shifter, rotating the ring momentarily to this position will extinguish the low beam lamps and the parking lights will remain illuminated, the ring will automatically rotate back to the AUTO position. If the ring is rotated and held in this position for 2 seconds, all external lights are extinguished. When drive mode (D) is selected using the gear shifter, the lighting will enter AUTO mode and the parking light indicator on the driver display is illuminated.

When the ring is rotated to the position lamp setting, the front/rear position lamps and rear licence plate lamp will remain illuminated until the battery is depleted.

High beam



Lighting switch

Pushing the stalk forward with the low beam selected will illuminate the high beam lights. The high beam indicator on the driver display will also be illuminated.

Pushing the stalk forward with AUTO selected activates the adaptive driving beam function. A second push of the stalk will illuminate the high beam lights. The adaptive driving beam indicator on the driver display will change to the high beam indicator.

Note!

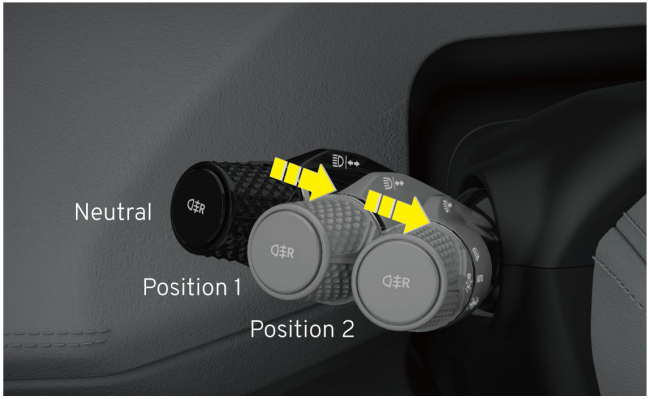
The inside of any exterior lamp lens may temporarily condensate. This is normal and will slowly dissipate once the lamps have been activated.

Adaptive driving beam

The adaptive driving beam function automatically adjusts the matrix lamp beams in the headlight assemblies to alter your vehicle's headlight pattern to avoid affecting any vehicles in front or in opposite lanes.

When adaptive driving beam is activated, the corresponding indicator on the driver display is illuminated:

- White: adaptive driving beam activated.
- Blue: adaptive driving beam on.
- Orange: adaptive driving beam failed.



Lighting switch

When the high beams are turned on, turn back the stalk switch to the level 1 position and the high beams will be turned off. When the high beams are off, turn back the stalk switch to the level 1 position, and the overtake light will flash. After the stalk switch is released, it will reset automatically and the high beams will go out.

When the high beams are illuminated or the ADB is activated, turn back the stalk switch to the level 2 position, and the high beam or ADB will be turned off. When the high beams are off, turn back the stalk switch to the level 2 position, and the high beams will light up. After the stalk switch is released, it will reset automatically and the high beams will be turned off.

⚠ Warning!

Adaptive driving beam is only an aid. The driver is always responsible for switching manually between high and low beams as necessary dependent on traffic, weather conditions or any local legal requirements.

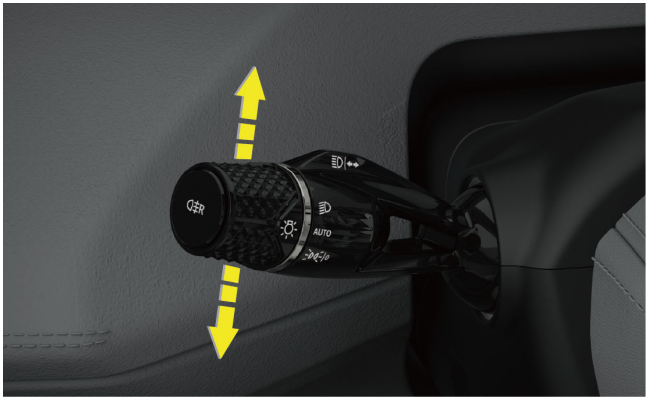
Rear fog lamp



Lighting switch

Rotate the ring to or **AUTO** , and press the switch on the end of the stalk to turn on the rear fog lamps. The rear fog lamp indicator on the driver display is also illuminated.

Direction indicator lamps



Lighting switch

Short flash: Move the stalk up or down until resistance is felt and release. The indicator lamps or will flash three times.

Continuous flash: Move the stalk up or down past the resistance point to its end position, the stalk will remain in this position.

Automatic adjustment of headlight height

The headlights are provided with an automatic height adjustment function, which is activated depending on the loading situation of the vehicle and the road conditions, thereby improving driving safety.

Adaptive front lights function

Adaptive front lights will automatically adjust the angle and range of illumination to suit different driving conditions, projecting an effective light beam on the road ahead to provide you with good illumination.

Tap the icon on the centre screen display and select **Lights** to access the external light setting menu and tap the option to turn the adaptive front lights function on or off.

Door handle light



When the ambient light outside the vehicle is insufficient, the door handle light will illuminate the inside of the door handle for the convenience of vehicle unlocking, it wil automatically extinguish after a short time period.

Follow me home light

When there is insufficient ambient light outside of the vehicle, some external lights can remain on for a period of time after the vehicle is locked, serving as a Follow Me Home purpose.

You can tap the icon on the centre screen display and select **Lights** to access the external light setting interface, where you can tap to turn on or off the **Follow me home** function and set the lighting duration.

Approach lighting light

When there is insufficient ambient light outside the vehicle, some external lights will automatically turn on to provide illumination when you approach the vehicle within a certain range with the remote key.

You can tap the icon on the centre screen display and select **Lights** to access the external light setting interface, where you can tap to turn on or off the **Approach lighting** function.

Welcome show

You can tap the icon on centre screen display and select **Vehicle** to access the welcome function setting interface, where the welcome show can be activated.

When you are unlocking the vehicle from the outside, some of the exterior lights will be illuminated, accompanied by synchronous opening and closing of the active grille shutte(AGS). If your vehicle is equipped with a front lidar and active rear spoiler, they will also deploy and fold synchronously.

When you are locking the vehicle from the outside, some of the exterior lights will be illuminated.

ⓘ Note!

- To make it easier for you to get into the vehicle in dim environment, the door sill lamp illuminate when a door is opened.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a front lidar, the front lidar may not deploy when unlcoking the non sleep state state vehicle via the key fob and mobile APP,

Tourist mode

When driving a vehicle to a country or region where the traffic system (LHD/RHD) has changed, the low beam light type must be adjusted to avoid causing glare to the opposite driver. This can be switched in the centre screen display.

You can click the icon on the centre screen display, and select **Lights** to enter the external light setting interface, where you can click to turn on or off the **Tourist Mode** .

Trailer lamp check*

When your vehicle is towing a trailer, you can test whether the trailer light is normal after the trailer is installed.

You can click the icon on the centre screen display, select **Lights** to enter the external light setting interface, and click **START** to test whether the trailer light is normal.

Internal lighting control

Ambient lights

The ambient lights are divided into dynamic ambient lights and static ambient lights. The dynamic ambient lights is able to display in forms of dynamic water flow. While the static ambient lights enable a variety of colour change effects.

Click the icon on the centre screen display and click **Lights** to access the light setting interface. Then click to turn the ambient lights on or off.

Ambient lights colour adjustment



Ambient lights colour adjustment

1. System default colour
2. Custom colour adjustment mode

Select the custom ambient lights colour adjustment mode to choose the colour of the ambient lights.

The ambient lights can be associated with climate control system, charging and incoming call, and changes according to the different states of the vehicle.

You can drag the slider to any position of the brightness adjustment bar to set the brightness of the ambient lights.

Reading lamps



Front reading lamp switch

Click the reading lamp switch, and the ambient lamp in the outer ring of the reading lamp will illuminate white, and the reading lamp will light up in turn.

Touch the corresponding side reading light to illuminate the reading light; touch again to turn off.

The intensity of the reading light can be adjusted by pushing the reading lamp housing on the corresponding side for a longer or shorter period of time.

ⓘ Note!

When the front reading lamps are turned on, the surrounding ambient lamp will be illuminated in white without colour change effect.

⚠ Warning!

When the ambient light is weak, do not turn on the front reading lamps while driving as this may cause relections on the windscreen, resulting in unclear visibility of the road ahead which could cause a possible accident.



Rear reading lamps



Rear reading lamps*

For the operation method of the rear reading lights, refer to the front reading light.

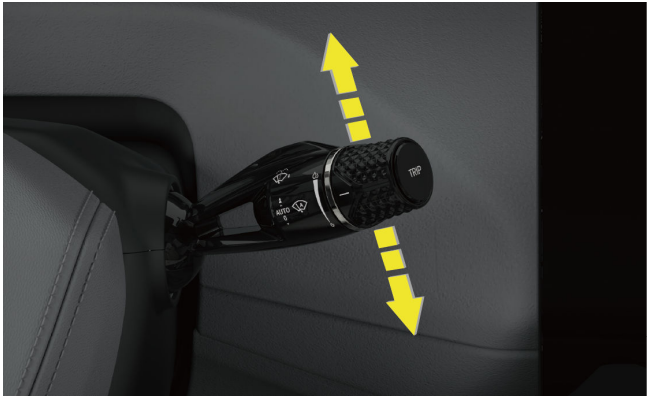
Boot light



When the tailgate is opened, the light in the boot will be illuminated automatically; when the tailgate is closed, the light in the boot will extinguish automatically.

Wiper control

Front windscreen wipers and washer



Windscreen wiper switch



Single wiping: Press the stalk downwards from the 0 position and release, the wipers will sweep over the windscreen once.



Windscreen wipers off.



continuously at normal speed: press the switch upwards to this position for the wipers to operate continuously at normal speed.



continuously at high speed: press the switch further upwards for the wipers to operate continuously at high speed.

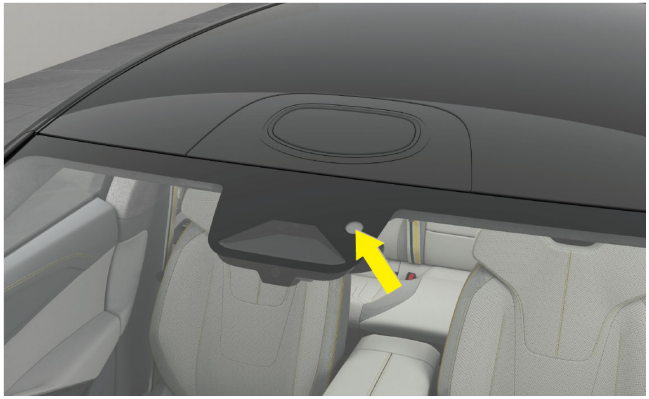
Caution!

Before using the wipers check that the blades are not frozen and any snow or ice is scraped off the windscreen.

Note!

- To prevent damaging the wiper blades, clean the windscreen first before using the wipers if there are any foreign objects stuck to the windscreen such as dust, bird droppings, insects or tree sap/pollen.
- When using the wiper to clean the windscreen, it also activates the windscreen washers, otherwise both the wipers and the windscreen may be damaged.
- Check the condition of the wiper blades regularly. A worn or damaged wiper blade rubber may not clean the windscreen properly.
- Please use a good quality windscreen washer fluid, as non-conforming detergent products may cause damage to the washer or corrosion to the glass.

Automatic rain-sensing wiper



Rain and light sensor module (RLSM)

When the driver door is closed and the driver seat sensor detects that the driver seat is occupied, the Rain and light sensor module (RLSM) will automatically activate the front windscreen wipers according to the rainfall intensity.

AUTO

Automatic wiper: when the wiper lever is toggled to the AUTO position, the indicator on instrument cluster will be illuminated, and the automatic wiping function is turned on.

Caution!

Before activating maintenance mode or using the auto-wash function, disable the auto wiping function. Otherwise, the wiper may be activated accidentally, causing damage to the vehicle. Refer to **Inspection and replacement of wiper blade** (p.310).



Rainfall sensor sensitivity roller

The sensitivity of the induced rainfall can be adjusted by turning the sensitivity scroll wheel of the RLSM upward and downward. The higher the sensitivity when turning the scroll wheel upward, the shorter the wiping interval will be. Conversely, the lower the sensitivity when turning the scroll wheel downward, the longer the wiping interval will be.

Caution!

Do not rely solely on the automatic rain-sensing wipers. Always adjust the wiping manually according to the actual situation.

Front windscreen washers



Windscreen wiper switch

Pull the wiper stalk towards you to activate the washers. The wipers will also sweep over the windscreen several times.

Washer fluid level: a notification message will be shown in the central screen display to add washer fluid if the fluid level becomes low in the washer fluid reservoir. Reference to **Windscreen washer fluid** (p.309).

⚠ Warning!

Do not use your wipers if rain or washer fluid is frozen on the windscreen, this could obscure your vision and potentially cause and accident.

Wing mirror adjustment

Outside mirror adjustment

The outside door mirror reflects the road behind, to the side, and underneath the vehicle, allowing you to indirectly see the conditions in those locations and expanding your field of vision.

⚠ Warning!

- When you check the road conditions outside the vehicle by the outside door mirrors, you should judge the traffic conditions and drive carefully.
- Objects in the mirror may appear farther away than they actually are.

Lens adjustment



Outside door mirror adjustment switch

The outside door mirror adjustment switch is located on the driver door trim panel.

- Short press the exterior mirror adjustment switch on the driver's door handle to activate the outside door mirror adjustment. Press it again to switch the outside door mirror. The outside door mirrors can be adjusted by the multi-function button on the right side of the steering wheel if activated.



- Move the menu/voice button upward to switch to the outside door mirror adjustment; scroll the right multi-function button left and right to switch to the corresponding outside door mirror.



1. Menu/Voice button
2. Right multi-function button

- Scroll the right multi-function button up/down and left/right to adjust the lens position. And press the right multi-function button to confirm the selection.



Folding of door mirror



door mirror folding switch

The door mirror folding switch is located on the driver door inner trim panel.

When the car is powered on or in READY state, press the door mirror folding switch to allow the mirrors on both sides to be folded or unfolded simultaneously.

When the car is locked, the door mirrors will fold automatically. When the car is unlocked, the door mirrors will unfold automatically.

⚠ Warning!

Do not adjust the door mirrors while the car is running, otherwise it may cause personal injury or death and property damage. Before you drive the vehicle, ensure that the door mirrors have been unfolded and properly adjusted. If manual reset is required, please check whether there are foreign objects such as ice and snow on the folding surface, and remove them before resetting, otherwise the folding structure of the door mirrors can be damaged.

Automatic angling when reversing

When the R gear is engaged, the outside wing mirrors will automatically adjust their angle downward, thus enabling the driver to observe the ground more clearly. After R gear is disengaged, the outside wing mirrors will return to their normal position.

Click the ⚙ icon on the centre screen display to enable or disable the mirror angle down when reversing in the **Vehicle** function

setting interface. With the function of mirror angle down when reversing activated, you can choose to fold down the left, right or both side mirrors and save.

ⓘ Note!

- When the reversing speed is greater than 10 km/h, the outside wing mirrors will return to the normal position.
- The door mirror angle can be adjusted and memorized when the door mirrors are angled down in reverse.

Door mirror heating

Click the temperature value on the central screen display to switch to the climate control interface, then click on the icon to turn on or off the defrosting/defogging function of the door mirrors and remove rain, water mist or ice and snow from the mirror surface.



Door mirror heating via front console

By pressing the icon on the centre console, you can activate or deactivate the defrosting/defogging function of the door mirrors to remove rain, water mist or ice and snow from the mirrors.

Automatic anti-glare outside wing mirror

When the ambient light outside the vehicle is insufficient and the drive (D) gear is engaged, the automatic anti-glare outside wing mirror can automatically weaken the light from the rear, so that the rear view is kept in a good observation state.

This function will be automatically turn off when reverse (R) is engaged or the vehicle is powered off.

Outside streaming mirror adjustment*

The outside door mirror reflects the road behind, to the side, and underneath the vehicle, allowing you to indirectly see the conditions in those locations and expanding your field of vision.

⚠ Warning!

- When you check the road conditions outside the vehicle by the outside door mirrors, you should judge the traffic conditions and drive carefully.
- Objects in the mirror may appear farther away than they actually are.

Streaming mirror adjustment interface via steering wheel button



Outside door mirror adjustment switch

The outside door mirror adjustment switch is located on the driver door trim panel.

- Short press the Streaming Media door mirror adjustment switch on the driver's door handle to activate it; press again to switch mirrors. The streaming mirror can be adjusted by the multi-function button on the right side of the steering wheel.



- Move the menu/voice button upward to switch to the outside door mirror adjustment; Scroll the right multi-function button left and right to switch to the corresponding streaming mirror.



1. Menu/Voice button
2. Right multi-function button

- Scroll the right multi-function button up/down and left/right to adjust the camera position, and press the right multi-function button to confirm the selection.



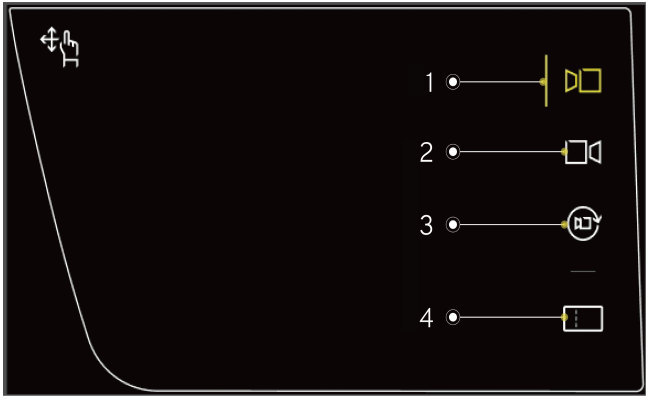
⚠ Warning!

Do not cover the sensor or display. Dirt, ice and snow, if accumulated on the camera, may degrade its function and performance. Always pay attention to the cleanliness of the camera and its surroundings to avoid traffic accidents.

ⓘ Note!

- When the vehicle is started, the streaming mirror will start a selfptest procedure. Contact your Lotus retailer if a fault alarm message is shown in the driver display screen.
- The streaming mirror can effectively minimize driving blind spots, expand your field of vision, and improve the safety of driving and parking.
- The streaming mirrors are automatically turned off after the vehicle has been locked for short time period. The streaming mirrors will only enter into a sleep state after a long time period has elapsed after the screen has deactivated so that you can quickly wake up the screen when entering the vehicle.

Touch screen adjustment streaming interface



1. Left view switch
2. Right view switch
3. Reset switch
4. HD/wide field of view toggle switch

ⓘ Note!

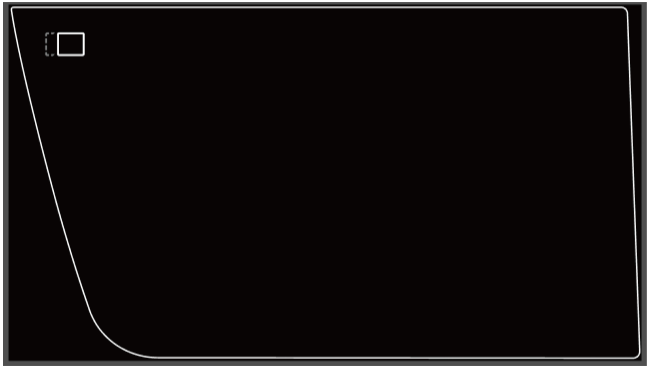
- Press and hold the reset switch to restore both streaming media screens to the default view of the current mode.
- After engaging R gear, you can adjust the reverse angle by using the multifunction button on the right of the steering wheel or clicking and dragging the streaming media interface. The system will memorize the angle you adjusted.
- In R gear, the HD/wide-angle view change-over switch will be deactivated.

You can click and drag the driver's streaming media interface to select different view angles as needed, and click the left/right side view switch to go to the view adjustment interface of corresponding side.

You can also select HD or wide field of view temporary field of view by clicking the field of view toggle switch, and the system will memorize your selected field of view.

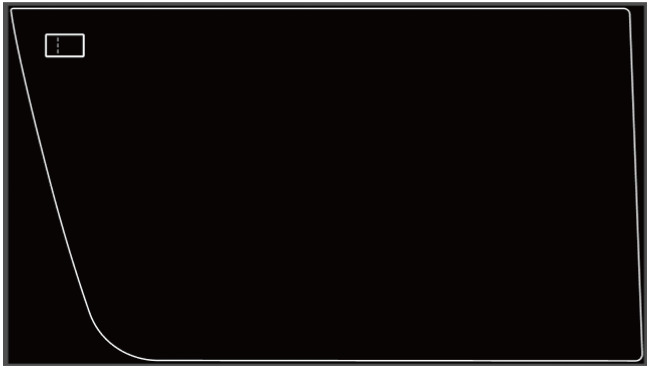
The HD field of view is set by default field of view. The wide-angle field of view is for temporary use to provide a larger field of view. In HD/wide-angle field of view, click the reset switch to reset the current field of view of one side door mirror, press and hold the reset switch to reset the mirrors on both sides simultaneously.

When you are in an HD field of view and adjust the field of view, the streaming interface will display a prompt icon.



Adjust HD field of view

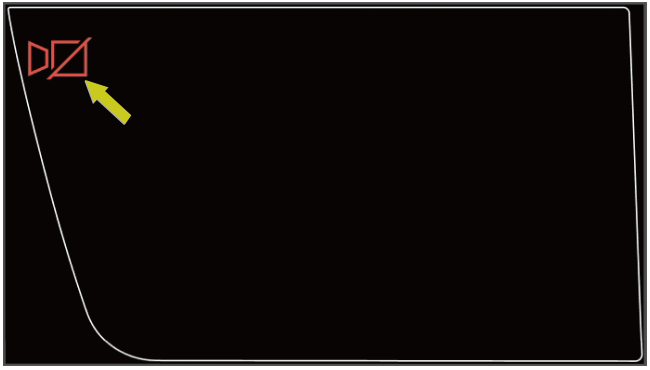
When in a wide field of view, the streaming interface will display a prompt icon.



Wide field of view

⚠ Warning!

- After the use of wide field of view, the field of view will return to HD.
- If the driver normally wears glasses to correct any vision impairments, then they should ensure they wear them whilst using the streaming media function, to avoid potential traffic accidents or casualties due to the inability to clearly observe the information on the display.



Streaming mirror fault

Contact your Lotus retailer if the streaming interface displays this fault icon and any of these messages in the driver display.

- Camera fault
- Display fault
- Control unit fault

⚠ Warning!

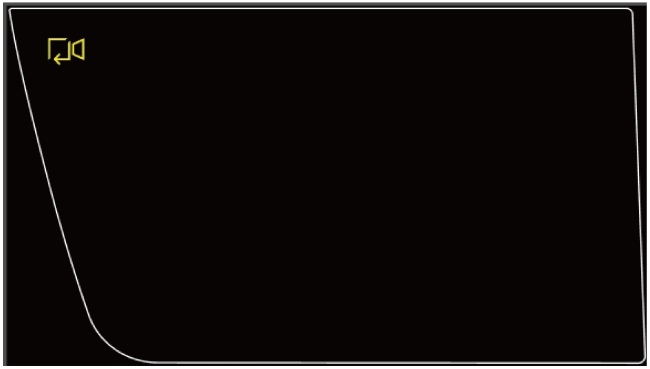
- The streaming mirror should only be used as an additional aid in conjunction to using door mirrors. If the streaming mirror fails, the view may become delayed, blurred or inoperative.
- Please do not add items such as pendants and stickers to the external camera and internal display of the streaming media rearview mirror. As this may cause traffic accidents or personal injuries due to obstructing the line of sight.
- Sunlight or other strong light shining or reflecting on the streaming media rearview mirror display may make it difficult for you to see images or warning messages. Drivers should be extra vigilant and careful when driving in strong light environments.
- Streaming Media rearview mirrors rely on high-quality video streaming and cannot completely avoid short interruptions, delays, blue screen restarts, and other situations caused by external electrical/magnetic interference in extreme situations. In case of abnormalities, drivers should carefully leave the interference area or slowly pull over to the side of the road to ensure safety, and continue driving after the view returns to normal. If there is no recovery for a long time, please contact your Lotus retailer.

Folding of streaming mirror



Streaming mirror folding switch

The streaming mirror folding switch is located on the driver door inner trim panel.



Streaming mirror folding

When the car is powered on or in READY state, press the streaming mirror folding switch to allow the mirrors on both sides to be folded or unfolded simultaneously.

Click the ⚙ icon on the centre screen display to enable or disable the auto fold side camera lock in the **Vehicle** function setting interface. With the auto fold side camera on lock enabled, the outside mirrors will automatically fold/unfold when the vehicle is locked/unlocked.

⚠ Warning!

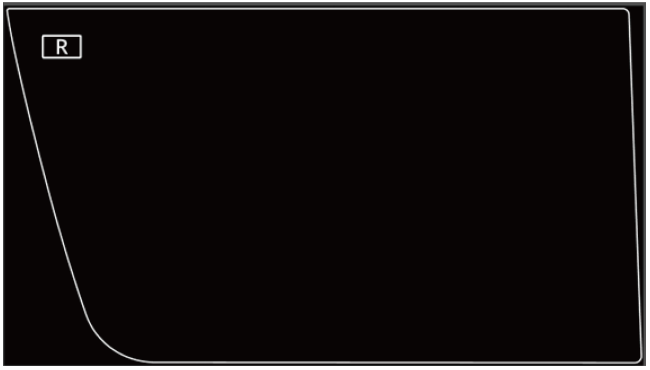
Do not adjust the streaming mirror while the car is moving, otherwise personal injury or property damage may be caused. Before you are driving the car, ensure that the streaming mirrors

have been unfolded and properly adjusted. If manual reset is required, please check whether there are foreign objects such as ice and snow on the folding surface, and remove them before resetting, otherwise the folding mechanism of the streaming mirror can be easily damaged.

Streaming media rearview mirror reversing view switch

When the vehicle is in reverse gear (R) and the speed is less than 10 km/h, the viewing angle of the streaming media rearview mirror automatically adjusts to the viewing angle memorized by the system when it was in last in reverse gear, and the streaming media interface will display the R gear icon. The viewing angle can be adjusted with reverse gear selected and the system will memorise this new viewing angle. After exiting reverse gear (R), the viewing angle of the streaming media rearview mirror returns to the normal position.

When the reversing speed is greater than or equal to 10 km/h, the streaming media door mirror will return to its normal position.



Streaming mirror heating

The streaming mirrors rear camera has a heater function, which can provide better visibility in conditions such as rain, snow or night time driving.

Click the temperature value on the centre screen display to switch to the climate control interface, then click on the icon to turn on or off the defrosting/defogging function of the outside mirrors to remove rain, water mist or ice and snow from the mirror surface.

Streaming mirror brightness adjustment

To ajust the brightness display, click the icon on centre screen display, and select **Display** (p.282) to enable or disable the

brightness adjustment function. Drag the slider on the brightness adjustment scale to set the display brightness.

ⓘ Note!

The streaming mirror can also monitor the ambient light intensity through a photosensitive sensor and automatically adjust the brightness.

Inside mirror adjustment



Inside wing mirror

Hold the outer edge of the rearview mirror and adjust the angle as required.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving.
- Do not hang anything on the rearview mirror.

! Caution!

Do not over adjust the angle of the rearview mirror to prevent damage to the mirror.

Automatic anti-glare function

Rearview mirror anti-glare function automatically reduces headlight glare from vehicles behind by adjusting the mirror to a dimmed view, improving night driving safety and comfort.

This function is turned of automatically when either reverse gear is engaged, or the vehicle is turned off.

! Caution!

Do not block the sensor on the rearview mirror, and clean the surface of the sensor regularly to avoid the decline of anti-glare performance.

Garage door opener (HomeLink)*

Once the garage is connected to HomeLink, you can press the button on the lower edge of the rearview mirror to open or close the garage door if the garage door receiver is in range of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

Before setting up or using HomeLink, make sure people or items are far from the garage door so as to prevent serious injury or damage.

Creating HomeLink



1. HomeLink indicator

Park your vehicle safely in front of the garage door and create a Homelink connection by observing the following steps:

1. Press and release the button that needs to be set on the lower edge of the inside mirror, and then check if the HomeLink indicator can slowley flashes orange.

ⓘ Note!

If not, refer to **Deleting HomeLink** (p.131).

2. Press and hold the garage door remote opening/closing button near the button on the rearview mirror needs to be set (2-8cm), and if the HomeLink indicator illuminates green or flashes quickly, release the garage door remote control.
3. Press and release the button that needs to be set, and if the HomeLink indicator remains green, it means the garage door can be opened/closed normally, i.e., the setting is completed.

ⓘ Note!

- Press and release the button that needs to be set, and if the HomeLink indicator flashes green quickly, press and hold the set button for 3s and repeat this operation for no more than 3 times. Then the garage door can be opened/closed normally, i.e., the setting is completed.

- If there are two buttons respectively to remotely control the opening and closing of the garage door, it is necessary for you to select any two buttons on the lower edge of the inside mirror to complete the process of opening and closing.

Press and release the button that needs to be set, then the HomeLink indicator can flash green quickly; if the garage door still cannot be opened/closed normally after three times of pressing and holding the button that has been set for 3 seconds, observe the following steps to create HomeLink:

1. Find "Learning"/"Intelligent"/"Program" button on the garage door opening motor.

ⓘ Note!

The location, name, and colour of the buttons may vary with the manufacturers, therefore please refer to the user manuals.

2. Press and release the "Learning"/"Intelligent"/"Program" button, and then perform the next step within 30 seconds.
3. Press and hold the button that needs to be set for 2 seconds, repeat this operation for 3 times, and then press and release the button that needs to be set. The garage door will be opened/closed normally, i.e., the setting is completed.

Deleting HomeLink

To delete HomeLink on three buttons simultaneously, you can press and hold the left and right buttons at the same time for more than 10 seconds, and when the HomeLink indicator changes from continuous lighting to rapid flashing, release the two buttons.

⚠ Caution!

- It is not allowed to press and hold for more than 20s.
- HomeLink on a single button cannot be deleted. If you want to change it, please refer to **Resetting HomeLink** (p.131).

Resetting HomeLink on a single button

If the HomeLink option on a single button is incorrect and needs to be reset or replaced, observe the following steps to complete the resetting:

1. Press and hold the button on which the HomeLink needs to be reset, and after 20 seconds, check that the HomeLink indicator slowly flashes orange.
2. After releasing the button that needs to be reset, refer to **Creating HomeLink** (p.130) to reset or replace the homelink option.

ⓘ Note!

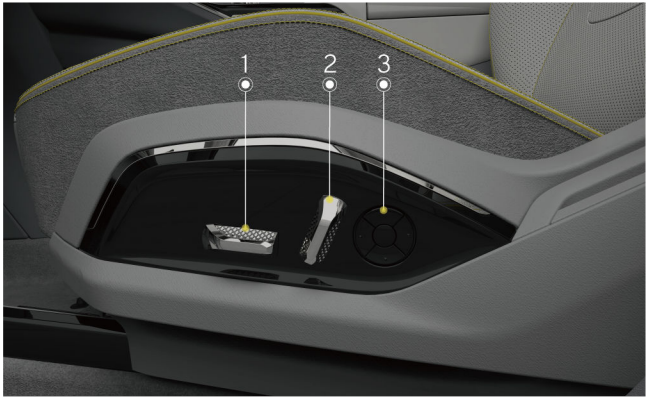
If you do not reset or replace HomeLink with reference to **Creating HomeLink** , it will restore to the previously stored Homelink settings.

Seat

Front seat adjustment

Front seat adjustment

Switches are located on the outboard side of the front seats to adjust driver and front passenger seating positions.

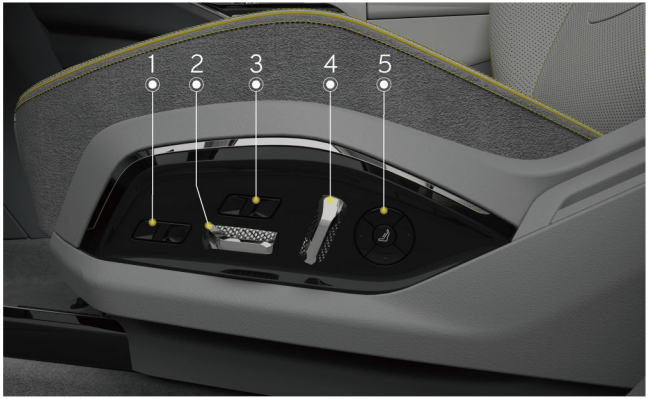


Front seats adjusting switch

1. Move the front end of the control switch up/down to adjust the cushion angle; move the rear end of the control switch up/down to adjust the cushion height; move the control switch forward/backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.
2. Move the control switch forward/backward to adjust the seat back angle.
3. Press the top/bottom/front/rear of the switch to adjust the lumbar support.

Front seat adjustment*

Switches are located on the outboard side of the front seats to adjust driver and front passenger seating positions.



Front seats adjusting switch

1. Press the front/rear of the control switch to adjust the cushion extension.
2. Move the front end of the control switch up/down to adjust the cushion angle; move the rear end of the control switch up/down to adjust the cushion height; move the control switch forward/backward to move the seat forward and backward.
3. Press the front/rear of the control switch to adjust the backrest side support.
4. Move the control switch forward/backward to adjust the seat back angle.
5. Press the top/bottom/front/rear of the combination switch to adjust the lumbar support; press the middle button to activate the seat massage function.

⚠ Warning!

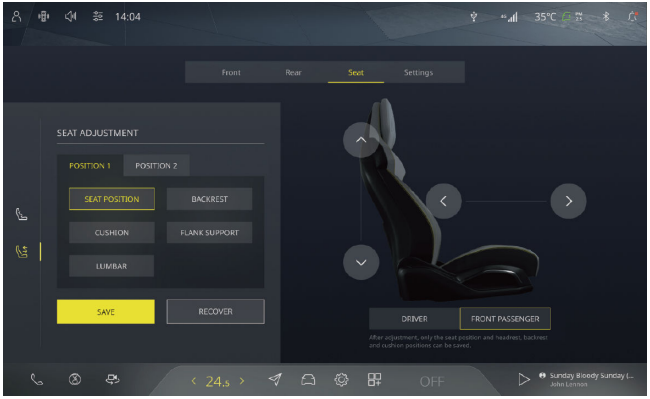
- Do not attempt to adjust the seat position or steering wheel whilst driving as this could adversely affect your control of the vehicle.
- Sit as far back from the steering wheel as is comfortable, whilst ensuring that the brake pedal can still be fully depressed and that full control of the vehicle can be maintained.
- Do not put your feet on the instrument panel or extend your feet out of the window, as this may cause personal injury.
- Never adjust the seat backrest so that it is too far reclined. In the event of an accident or sudden braking the occupant may be positioned lower than their seat belt, which could potentially cause personal injury.
- Ensure that no persons or objects will be trapped when adjusting the seat.
- The electric front seats can still be adjusted after the vehicle has been powered down. To avoid the risk of an accident, do not leave children alone in the vehicle.

Note!

- The front seat headrests are an integral part of the seats and cannot be disassembled.
- You can only operate up to two electric seat adjustment switches at the same time.

Central display to adjust the front seats

You can also adjust the front seats from the centre screen display.



Switch to the front seat adjustment interface via the voice function or by clicking **Seat** in the centre screen display air conditioning control interface. After the front seat adjustment is completed, click **SAVE** to store the current position of the seat.

Click **RECOVER** to return to the saved memory location.

Note!

- When the seat is adjusted using the power adjustment buttons on the seat, it cannot be adjusted using the centre screen display.
- It is not possible to adjust the main driver's seat using the centre screen display at speeds greater than 5 km/h.

Easy access

The easy access function allows the driver to leave or enter the vehicle more conveniently using the automatic seat adjustment easy access function.

Click the icon in the centre screen display and select the **Vehicle** to turn on or off the easy access function.

The easy access function will be activated (if turned on) when the driver opens the door while sitting in the driver seat, allowing the seat to be retracted and lowered to facilitate the driver's exit.

Once someone is detected on the corresponding seat after the driver side door is closed, the driver seat will automatically adjust to the position where the driver got off the car last time.

Caution!

In the process of easy access, please pay attention to the rear passengers to avoid squeezing and collision. You can interrupt the easy access by manually adjusting the seat switch.

Note!

Even if the easy access function is enabled, it will not work if the driver seat is nearly at its rearmost position.

Front seat massage*

You can click **Massage** in the climate control interface on the centre screen display to switch to the front seat massage setting interface, and then select the massage modes and massage intensities required.

Note!

- The factory default mode is **WAVE** , and the factory default strength is **SOFT** .
- Operating the lumbar support during the massage process will cause the seat massage to stop. After the lumbar support is adjusted, the seat massage will continue.
- Long term and frequent use of the seat massage function may cause the seat massage to enter overheating protection mode. After cooling for a period of time, the seat massage function will return to normal.
- During the massage process, if the driver or passengers forcefully push against the backrest, it may cause the seat massage to enter overpressure protection mode. Restarting the seat massage will restore the seat massage function to normal.

Rear seat adjustment

Adjusting the rear seat

The electric adjustment button can be used to adjust the seat position as required.



Seat back angle adjustment

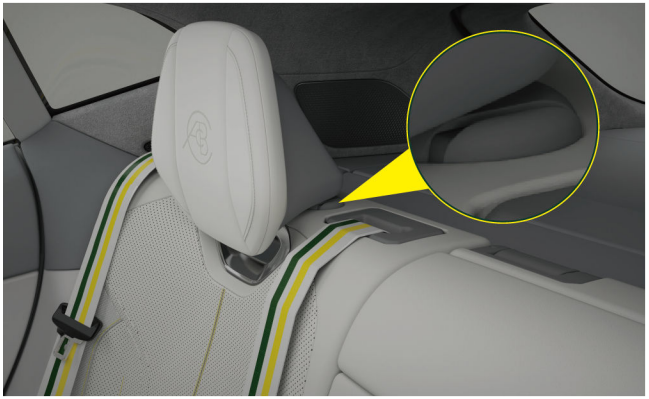
1. Move the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat back angle.

⚠ Warning!

- Before driving, shake the rear seat back and forth to make it lock in place, otherwise, in the event of an accident or sudden braking, personal injury may occur.
- Do not extend your feet out of the window, or place them on the seat, as this may cause personal injury.
- Do not incline the seat backrest excessively, otherwise the protection effect of the seat belt will not be guaranteed. For example, in the event of an accident or emergency braking, the person wearing the belt of the over-inclined seat may be lower than the seat belt and thus injured.
- Before moving the seat, make sure that the seat movement area is unobstructed, to prevent damaging items or pinching passengers.
- The rear seats can still be adjusted after the vehicle is powered off. Do not leave children alone in the vehicle, otherwise there may be a risk of injury.

Rear adjustable headrest

The second row outboard seats include an adjustable headrest that you can raise, lower, or remove. When either of these seats is occupied by a passenger that is not in a child seat, the corresponding headrest should be adjusted (align the centre of the headrest with the centre of the occupant's head) and locked into position.



Rear headrest button

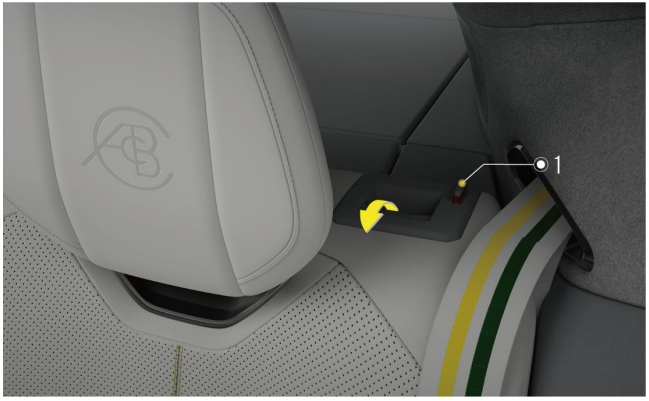
The rear passengers can manually adjust the height of the rear headrest according to their height until their heads can rest completely against the headrest:

- Pull upward to adjust the rear headrest upward.
- Press and hold the rear headrest button to adjust the rear headrest downward.

⚠ Warning!

- After adjusting the headrest, please pull it up or press it down to ensure that the headrest is locked in place.
- All occupants, including the driver, must adjust the headrest to the proper position before operating the vehicle or sitting in the vehicle's seat to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

Folding/unfolding of rear seat



The locking device is located on the outer side of the head restraint

1. Unlock indicator

Press the locking device and when the unlocking indicator is fully ejected, fold the rear seat backrest forward.

Pull out the rear seat belt at the corresponding side, then turn the seat backrest backward and when the unlock indicator retracts, this indicates the rear seat backrest is fully extended and locked.

⚠ Warning!

Before using the rear seat, make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked in place.

! Caution!

Before folding the rear seat backrest, clear the seat, unfasten the seat belt and retract the central armrest, otherwise the seat may be damaged.

ⓘ Note!

Lower the rear seat headrest to the lowest level and adjust the front seat backrest forward appropriately, otherwise the rear seat backrest may not be fully folded.

Front passenger seat adjustment

Click the icon ⚙ on rear display and select **Seat** to access the seat settings interface, where the position of front passenger seat can be adjusted by clicking the **FRONT PASSENGER** .

Removal of rear seat headrest

1. Fold the rear seat backrest to a certain angle, then press and hold the rear headrest adjustment button.
2. Pull the headrest upwards.

⚠ Warning!

- Never drive the vehicle with the headrest of the occupied rear seat removed, as this may increase the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.
- Store the removed rear seat headrest properly, a loose headrest may move around the cabin in the event of sudden braking or an accident and cause a potential injury.

Installation of rear seat headrest

1. Fold the backrest of the rear seats to a convenient installation angle.
2. Align the headrest rod with the mounting hole on the seat backrest.
3. Press and hold the corresponding headrest button and press the headrest down.
4. Deploy and lock the rear seat backrest.
5. Adjust the height of the headrest according to your height and make sure that the headrest is fully locked.

⚠ Warning!

Before the vehicle is in motion, all occupants, including the driver, must install and adjust their headrest correctly so that the top is flush with the top of the occupant's head to give full benefit of the protective effect of the headrest.

Seat heating

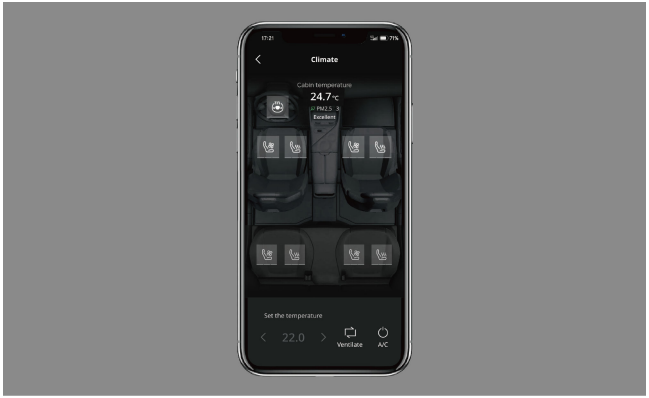
Front seat heating

To adjust the seat heating:

- Tap the **Front** in the air conditioning control surface of centre screen display to switch to the front air conditioning control interface, and tap the seat heating icon to turn on seat heating. When turned on the seat heating setting defaults to level 3 (maximum/fastest power). The minimum power and the slowest heating is level 1.

  Tap the seat heating icon again to lower the level further until the heating function is cancelled.
- The front seat heating can be turned on/off or the front seat heating level can be adjusted via intelligent voice.
- Switch to the air conditioning setting interface through the **Climate** on the mobile APP interface, and tap on the corresponding seat to display the seat working mode. The

adjustment method using mobile APP is the same as that available on the centre screen display.



Mobile APP seat heating setting interface

⚠ Warning!

If you or the occupants in the vehicle cannot feel the temperature of the seat or the parts of the body that come into contact with the seat cannot perceive pain, do not use the seat heating function, otherwise it may cause personal injury.

Including but not limited to the following groups:

- Infants, children, the elderly, people with disabilities or patients.
- People with sensitive skin or those whose skin is prone to burns.
- Exhausted occupants.
- Drunken occupants.
- People who are taking medicines that can make them feel sleepy or other unwell (e.g., sleeping pills, cold medicine).
- Other occupants who are unable to feel seat temperature or have no sense of pain.

ⓘ Note!

- A low state of charge of the high voltage battery will disable the seat heating function.
- If the heating function fails, the seat heating icon in the centre screen display is grey. Contact your Lotus retailer for assistance.
- When the vehicle is restarted, if the difference between the ambient temperature and the temperature recorded at the previous stop is small, the seat heating function will automatically be turned on according to the previous level.

Seat heating settings

Click the **Settings** in the climate control interface on the centre screen display to switch to the front seat heating setting interface.

Seat heating time is available from 5 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes or without restrictions(The default is 15 minutes.).

Rear seat heating*

Click the **Rear** in the climate control interface of the centre screen display to switch to the rear climate control interface. For the activation of the rear seat heating function. Refer to the **Front seat heating** (p.138).

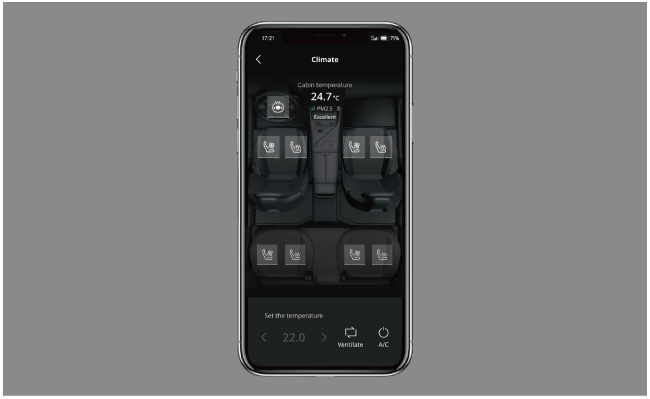
The rear seat heating function can also be controlled individually on the rear display, and the climate control interface can also be controlled.

Seat ventilation*

Front seat ventilation

- Click the **Front** in the climate control interface of centre screen display to switch to the front climate control interface, and then click the seat ventilation function icon to activate. The ventilation level ranges are from 0 to 3, level 1 has the lowest power and the slowest cooling, level 3 has the highest power and the fastest cooling, selecting level 0 turns off the seat ventilation.

  When you click the seat ventilation icon, the default is level 3. Repeat clicking to decrease the level further until the ventilation function stops.
- Intelligent voice can turn front seat ventilation on/off or adjust the position of front seat ventilation.
- Switch to the air conditioning setting interface through the **Climate** on the mobile APP interface, and click on the corresponding seat to display the seat working mode. The adjustment on the mobile APP is the same as available on the centre screen display.



Mobile APP seat ventilation setting interface

ⓘ Note!

- A low state of charge of high voltage battery may cause the seat ventilation function failure to be activated. In this even the centre screen display will display corresponding text prompt.
- If the ventilation function fails, the seat ventilation icon will turn to grey. If this occurs, contact your Lotus retailer.

Seat ventilation settings

Click the **Settings** in the climate control interface on the centre screen display to switch to the front seat ventilation setting interface.

The seat ventilation time is available from 5 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes or without restrictions (The default is 15 minutes).

Rear seat ventilation

Click the **Rear** in the climate control interface of the centre screen display to switch to the rear climate control interface. For the activation of the rear seat ventilation function, refer to the **Front seat ventilation** (p.140).

The rear seat ventilation function can also be controlled individually on the rear display, and the climate control interface can also be controlled.

Air conditioner

Four-zone climate control system

Tap the temperature value on centre screen display to enter the climate control interface.

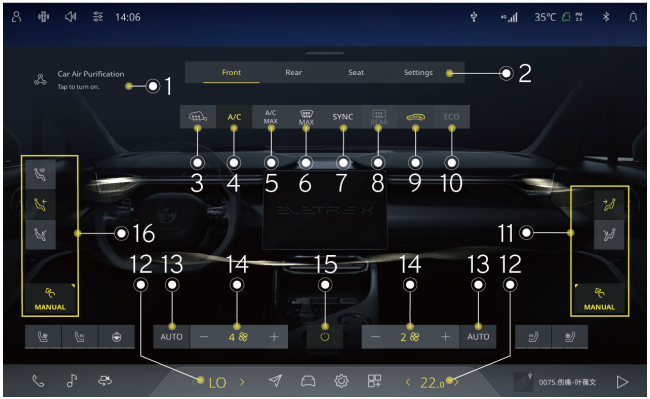
The automatic four-zone climate control system is automatically controlled according to the pre-set temperature in the vehicle, and the temperature, fan speed and air direction of the left front, right front, left rear and right rear climate areas in the vehicle can be adjusted separately according to the ambient temperature, interior temperature, sunshine, air quality and window fog.

When setting the climate of individual zones manually, the climate of other zones can still be kept in auto mode.

ⓘ Note!

- You can switch between the front and rear climate control interfaces on the centre screen display to control the four-zone climate control system.
- When the vehicle's high voltage battery state of charge is below 5% and a low-power charging station is used for charging, the air conditioning will temporarily become unusable.
- It is recommended that you regularly send your vehicle to a Lotus retailer for inspection or replacement of the A/C refrigerant or for any other problems relating the climate control system.

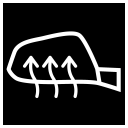
Front climate control interface



1. ION (negative oxygen ion) switch
2. Top control bar
3. Streaming mirror defrosting/defogging switch*
4. A/C switch
5. A/C MAX switch
6. Front windscreen defrosting/defogging switch
7. Synchronous switch
8. Rear windscreen defrosting/defogging switch
9. Internal and external circulation switch
10. ECO (economy mode) switch
11. Front passenger side air outlet mode
12. Driver/front passenger side temperature adjustment switch
13. Driver/front passenger side Auto climate control system switch
14. Driver/front passenger side fan speed setting switch
15. Front climate control system switch
16. Driver side air outlet mode



ION switch: click to turn on or off the negative oxygen ion function of the climate control system. It can actively improves the air quality inside the vehicle, greatly adds to a sense of wellbeing while reducing harmful particles and airborne germs.



Streaming mirror defrosting/defogging switch: click to turn on or off the exterior rear view mirror display defrost/defog function.



A/C switch: click to turn on or off the A/C refrigeration system. In auto mode, the A/C mode is on by default.



A/C MAX switch: after this switch is turned on by clicking, the air conditioning temperature will automatically adjust to the lowest and the fan speed will be adjusted to the maximum.



Front windscreen defrost/defog switch: click on or off the maximum defrost/defogging function to quickly remove ice or fog from the front windscreen and side windows.



Synchronous switch: after the synchronous sync is activated by tapping, the temperature, fan speed, blowing mode and auto mode in the vehicle can be adjusted synchronously from the driver side. After this feature is deactivated, each area can be can be adjusted separately. When the rear climate control system is turned off, the driver's side can only synchronously adjust the passenger area. The on/off status of this function will be memorized, and every time the vehicle is started, this function will return to the state before the vehicle is powered off.



Rear windscreen and outside mirror defrost/ defogging switches: click to turn on or off the defrost/defogging functions of rear windscreen and outside mirrors.



Internal circulation switch: click to activate the internal circulation of air in the vehicle.



External circulation switch: click to activate the external circulation of air in the vehicle.



Automatic circulation mode: when the climate control system is turned to auto mode, the internal/ external circulation will be automatically activated.



ECO switch: click to turn on or off the economic operation mode of the climate control system.



Window blowing mode: air flow blows front windscreen and front side window.



Face blowing mode: The air flow blows out from the centre and side air outlets, blowing the side faces of the driver and front passenger. When Face blowing mode is activated, you can set the automatic air swing function. The automatic air swing function has five modes: Manual, Air Swing, Focus, Avoidance, and Adaptive. After selecting different modes, the air direction will also produce

different effects such as static air direction and dynamic air direction.



Foot blowing mode: air flow blows to the side feet of the driver and front passenger.



Fan speed switch: tap "-" or "+" switch on both sides of the fan to adjust the fan speed at the corresponding side respectively. Adjust the fan speed to reduce or increase by 1 level, the higher the level, the greater the fan speed.



Front climate control system switch: click to turn the front climate control system switch on or off.

⚠ Warning!

- Before driving, make sure that all windows are free of ice, snow or fog, otherwise your vision will be obstructed, thus resulting in a traffic accident.
- Do not turn on the internal circulation function for a long time, which may cause the air in the vehicle to be not fresh and the windows to fog.

ⓘ Note!

- Turning off the climate control system switch is not turning off the climate control system. The heater system may still be working.
- Turning the air conditioning system on for the first time in a very humid environment may cause a slight fog to appear on the windscreen, this is normal and will soon dissipate.
- If the air conditioning system operates with excessive noise, you can manually lower the fan speed level.
- The air conditioning compressor not only provides cooling for the car, but also cools the battery. Therefore, in hot weather, even if the air conditioning is turned off, the compressor may still be working, which is a normal. This is to maintain the battery in an optimal temperature range to ensure longer service life and optimal performance.
- During operation or when the air conditioning system is turned off, there may be a slight sound similar to running water or purring, which is a normal phenomenon when the refrigerant is working normally in the air conditioning system.
- To ensure the optimum effeciency of the temperature control system, please close all windows and ensure that the external grille in front of the windscreen is free of ice, snow, leaves, and other debris.

- After the four zone synchronous switch is turned on, you can turn off the front and rear climate control systems simultaneously by tapping the front climate control system switch, adjusting the driver side fan speed to level 0, or pressing the driver side temperature adjustment switch.
- When you feel that the air inside the vehicle has become stale, you can turn on the external circulation function to let fresh outside fresh air enter the cabin.
- In auto mode, the fan speed can be selected from 3 levels. In non auto mode, the fan speed can be selected from 7 levels.
- When the air conditioning system is turned on while parked, it is normal for a small pool of water to form below the vehicle, which is excess water discharged during the dehumidification process.
- When locking the car and leaving, if it is found that the air conditioning blower inside the cabin is still working, it is normal for the air conditioning system to operate its self-drying function to minimize the accumulation of moisture or mold inside the air conditioning system.
- During the engine's break-in period, a "gurgling" sound may occur after the air conditioning system is turned on. This is caused by the thermal expansion of trapped air inside the engine thermostat and is a normal phenomenon. As the engine is run in, the air will naturally escape, and the sound will automatically disappear after a period of time.

climate control interface in the front centre console



1. Driver side temperature/fan speed adjustment switch
2. Passenger side temperature/fan speed adjustment switch

Short press the temperature adjustment switch on the driver's or passenger's side to turn on/off the corresponding area air conditioning system in the front row and enter the air conditioning control interface. In the air conditioning settings interface, you can customize the air conditioning lever adjustment function to temperature or fan speed in the set tings options.

When the air conditioning lever adjustment function is set to adjust temperature, turn the temperature/fan speed adjustment switch on the driver's or passenger's side up or down to adjust the corresponding side air conditioning temperature.

When the air conditioning lever adjustment function is set to adjust fan speed, turn the temperature/fan speed adjustment switch on the driver's or passenger's side up or down to adjust the fan speed of the corresponding side air conditioner.

ⓘ Note!

- Pull up or down and hold to quickly adjust the climate control system temperature or fan speed.
- Even if the high voltage battery state of charge is low, the use of the climate control system will not be restricted. Please note whether the high voltage battery meets the driving requirements.

Auto mode

The four climate control zones in the car can be switched individually to auto mode. You can switch the auto mode on/off by doing the following:

- Press the AUTO switch in the climate control interface of the front centre console to turn on/off the automatic mode of the four climate zones.
- Click the AUTO switch for individual climate zone on the front or rear climate control interface to enable/disable the AUTO mode of corresponding climate zone.



Auto mode: after clicking it on, the climate control system automatically controls the temperature, fan speed and air direction according to the temperature you set in the vehicle, and maintains the temperature in the vehicle at the temperature value you set.

The auto mode is deactivated when any of the following occurs:

- Activating maximum defrost function.
- Adjusting fan speed.
- Turning on A/C MAX.
- Turning off the AUTO switch.

Temperature adjustment

The four climate zones in the vehicle can be individually adjusted for temperature. When the front or rear climate system is turned on, you can long press the TEMP value and drag it left and right on the front or rear climate control interface to quickly select the expected temperature value, or you can click ◀ or ▶ on both sides of the TEMP to adjust the temperature.

Rear climate control interface of centre screen display

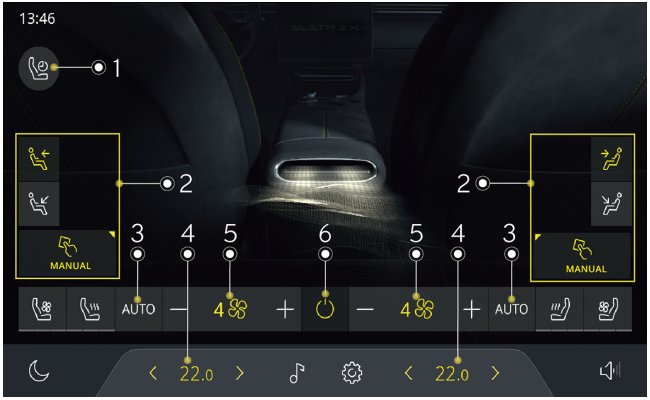


1. Top control bar
2. Rear left/right air outlet mode
3. Rear left/right temperature adjustment switch
4. Rear left/right Auto climate control system switch
5. Rear left/right fan speed setting switch
6. Rear climate control system switch

The activation/deactivation of rear climate control interface on the centre screen display can be found in the activation/deactivation of **Front climate control interface** (p.142).

Rear climate control interface

There is a rear climate control interface on the centre armrest of the rear seat.



1. Rear seat setting switch
2. Rear left/right air outlet mode
3. Rear left/right Auto climate control system switch
4. Rear left/right temperature adjustment switch
5. Rear left/right fan speed setting switch
6. Rear climate control system switch



Rear seat setting switch: click to enter the rear seat setting interface.



Face blowing mode: The air flow blows out from the centre and side air outlets, blowing the side faces of the driver and front passenger. When Face blowing mode is activated, you can set the automatic air swing function. The automatic air swing function has two modes: Manual and Air Swing. After selecting different modes, the air direction will also produce two different effects: static air direction and dynamic air direction.



Feet blowing mode: air flow blows towards the feet of the rear passengers.



Auto mode: after clicking it on, the climate control system automatically controls the temperature, fan speed and air direction according to the temperature you set in the vehicle, and maintains the temperature in the vehicle at the temperature value you set.



Fan speed switch: click "-" or "+" switch on both sides of the fan to adjust the fan speed at the corresponding side respectively. Adjust the fan speed to reduce or increase by 1 level, the higher the value, the greater the fan speed.



Rear climate control system switch: click to turn the rear climate control system on or off.

Remotely control A/C



You can remotely turn on or off the climate control in the following ways:

- Click the remote A/C switch of mobile APP to turn on or off the climate control system remotely.
- Click the **Climate** on mobile APP interface, switch to the climate control interface, click ⏻ to turn on or off the climate control system.
- Click the **Climate** on mobile APP interface, switch to the climate control interface, and click HI or LO to directly adjust the temperature to the highest or lowest when the air conditioning is turned on.

After the climate control system is turned on, you can drag the slider to any position of the temperature adjustment slider to set the temperature in the vehicle.

There are 3 levels to be selected for the remote control of the A/C on mobile APP (minimum 5 minutes, maximum 15 minutes). If you need to use the A/C for a longer time, you must remotely turn on the climate control system again.

If the air in the car is stale, you can also click the **Ventilation** switch, and remotely turn on the cabin cleaning function before getting in the car to allow the outside air entering the car for a period of time to remove any stale air and odours from inside the cabin. This will also have a cooling effect inside the cabin during high weather temperatures.

ⓘ Note!

- The remote control of climate control system with mobile APP only supports setting the temperature in the complete vehicle other than in individual zones.
- Any operation on mobile APP to control the climate control remotely will stop immediately after the driver unlocks the vehicle.

Climate settings

● Air quality

The air quality detection system can detect the humidity and PM 2.5 of the air inside the vehicle respectively.

You can click the ION switch on the front climate control interface to turn on, so that small charged particles of PM 2.5 level can be adsorbed to each other into larger particles and then filtered by the pollen filter to improve the air cleanliness.

ⓘ Note!

- After the ION air purifier is turned on, it is recommended that you close the windows.
- Reuse of the pollen filter may lead to a decrease in the air quality in the car, please replace the pollen filter regularly.

If mist appears on the front windshield, and the humidity and PM 2.5 concentration is high in the air inside the vehicle, a pop-up window will be triggered to remind you to turn on the automatic climate control interface. You can choose to **OPEN NOW** or **CANCEL** the climate control interface. If you do not action this within a short time period, the climate control system will automatically start.

ⓘ Note!

Turn off all automatic functions in the climate control interface to prevent the climate control system from being automatically turned on.

Air quality system (AQS)

The AQS consists of a pollen filter and an air quality sensor.

The multiple filters can filter out smoke and solid particles from the air entering the cabin, and remove odour and pollutants to maintain a healthy and fresh environment. The air quality sensor can monitor the content of pollutants in the air outside the vehicle. When the pollutant content reaches a certain level, the air inlet will be closed, and the air in the cabin will begin to circulate internally to avoid being polluted by the outside air.

Air inlet

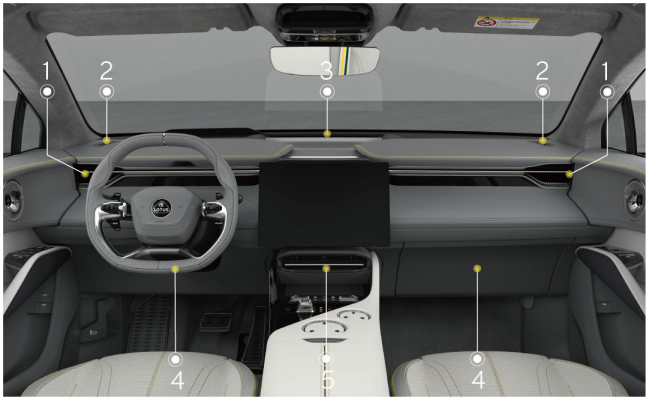


Air inlet

There may be leaves and insects built up in the air intake vents in the grille under the rear of the bonnet, so please clean up them regularly to avoid blockages.

Air outlet

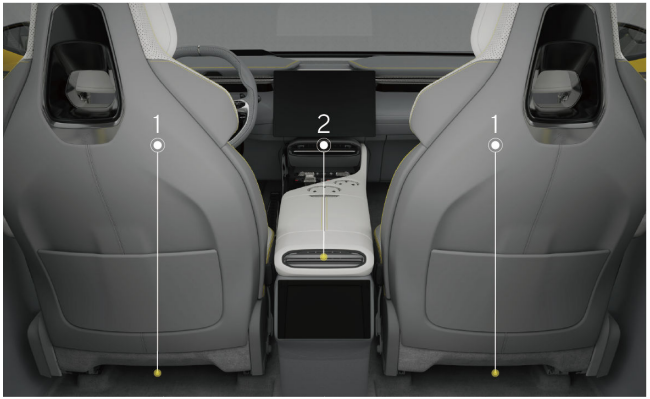
Overview of front air vents



Overview of front air vents

1. Front side air vents
2. Side defrost air vents
3. Front windscreen defrost air vents
4. Front foot air vents
5. Middle air vents

Overview of rear air vents



Rear air vents

1. Rear foot air vents
2. Rear air vents of tunnel console

Vent adjustment

The front air conditioner outlet is arranged with 4 electric adjustable air outlets, the rear is arranged with 2 electric adjustable air outlets, and each side of the B pillar is arranged with 1 manually adjustable air vent and each vent can be adjusted separately.



On the climate control interface, double-tap to turn on the corresponding air flow, and double-tap again to turn it off. Tap and drag the air flow to adjust the air flow direction.

When a vent is fully closed, double clicking on the corresponding side airflow will automatically activate the blowing mode while opening the corresponding air vent.

When the vehicle is powered off or the climate control is turned off, the status of the air vent will be remembered. After the vehicle is started and the climate control is turned on, the air vent will be opened in the same state as the last time the climate control was used.



Rear side air outlet

The air vents on the interior panels on both sides of the B-pillar can adjust the wind direction through the blades at the air outlets.

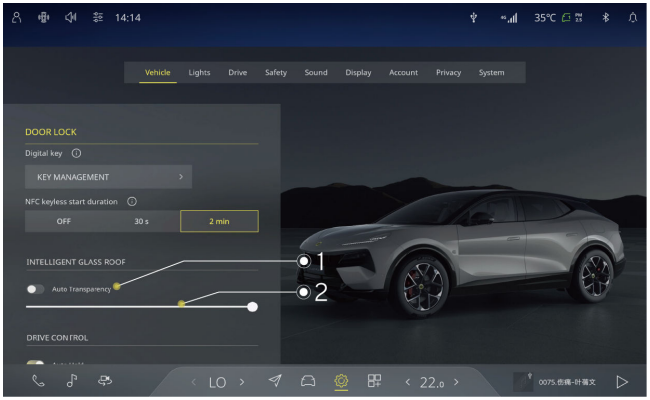
Panoramic sunroof*

The vehicle is equipped with a panoramic sunroof, which provides you with a wider field of vision, and the transparency of the sunroof can be adjusted for a better experience. Please note: the sunroof does not open.



Panoramic sunroof

Transparency adjustment



transparency adjustment interface

1. Auto transparency
2. Transparency adjustment switch

You can click the icon on centre screen display as needed, select the **Vehicle** , and switch to the sunroof transparency adjustment interface.

Manual transparency adjustment

Roof glass transparency has multiple levels, click or drag the slider to any position on the transparency adjustment slider to set the roof glass transparency.

Automatic transparency adjustment

Turn on the roof glass transparency automatic adjustment switch, the roof glass transparency will be adjusted automatically according to the ambient temperature and light intensity.

ⓘ Note!

After auto-adjust is turned on, manual adjustments cannot be made.

The roof glass transparency can also be adjusted automatically by any of the following operations:

- After the car is unlocked, the roof glass transparency is adjusted automatically to the transparency level when the car was last locked.
- When the car is locked from outside the car, the roof glass transparency will be adjusted automatically to the maximum level for complete atomization.

Intelligent voice transparency adjustment

You can adjust the roof glass transparency by intelligent voice.

After intelligent voice adjustment of the roof glass transparency to the maximum or minimum gear, it will be reminded by voice.

Wireless device charging



Sensing area for wireless charging

When charging, please place the mobile phone face up within the sensing area for wireless charging.

You can activate the wireless device charging function of your phone in the following ways:

- Tap the icon in the centre screen display to enable or disable the wireless mobile phone charging function in the **Vehicle** function setting interface. When you click to turn on the mobile phone wireless charging function, a pop-up window will appear prompting you to confirm.

- Swipe down from the top of the centre screen display to open the quick panel, and click **Wireless Charging** to turn this function on or off.

⚠ Warning!

- Drivers should not set up wireless charging while driving.
- Do not place objects containing metal components in the wireless charging induction area together with the mobile phone, otherwise the objects containing metal components may be heated or damaged, causing an accident.
- Do not put the unattended mobile phone in the vehicle for charging, so as to avoid a safety risk.

! Caution!

- Drivers should not set up wireless charging while driving.
- Do not place objects containing metal components in the wireless charging induction area together with the mobile phone, otherwise the objects containing metal components may be heated or damaged.
- Do not put the unattended mobile phone in the vehicle for charging, to avoid a potential security risk.

ⓘ Note!

- When the mobile phone is hot, the vehicle may stop charging to protect the battery of the mobile phone and the charging will not be resumed until the mobile phone cools down.
- It is normal for the mobile phone to experience an increase in temperature during charging.
- If you use the card key to start the vehicle, do not remove the card key to charge the mobile phone until the vehicle enters the READY state. If the wireless charging function is activated with the card key not removed, a reminder will appear on the centre screen display.
- The wireless charging function only supports mobile phones, earphones, stereos and other devices that meet the wireless charging protocol.
- Wireless charging supports up to 50W charging.
- When using wireless charging function, please place the device in the centre of the charging area to avoid causing the device to be unable to charge or have low charging efficiency.
- Only 1 mobile phone can be charged at a time.
- If the phone case is made of certain materials (such as a phone case with a metal bracket/metal magnet) or is too thick, it may cause charging failure.
- When driving on a bumpy road, the wireless charging of the mobile phone may be intermittently stopped.

- If the mobile phone cannot be charged properly, always make sure that the mobile phone is placed in the wireless charging area without foreign objects, or wait for the wireless charging induction area to cool down before another try. If it is still impossible to charge, please contact your Lotus retailer.
- When the vehicle is in P - Park gear, pressing the brake pedal will activate the function of detecting valid keys in the car, which will interrupt the wireless charging function of the phone; Opening the car door will trigger a valid key forget reminder, which will also interrupt the wireless charging function of the phone.

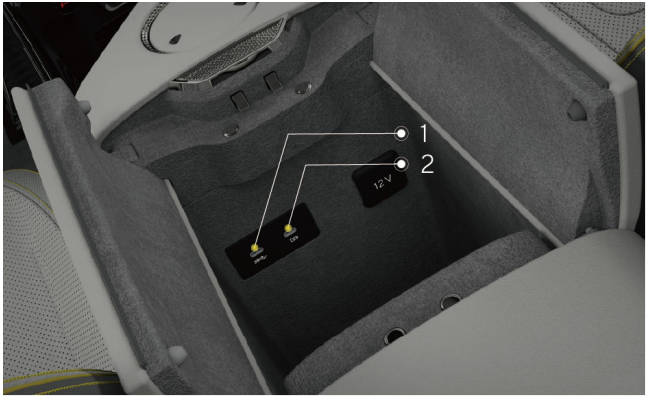
Car power

USB-C ports

Front USB-C ports

⚠ Warning!

Do not to connect a lead to a USB-C port while driving.

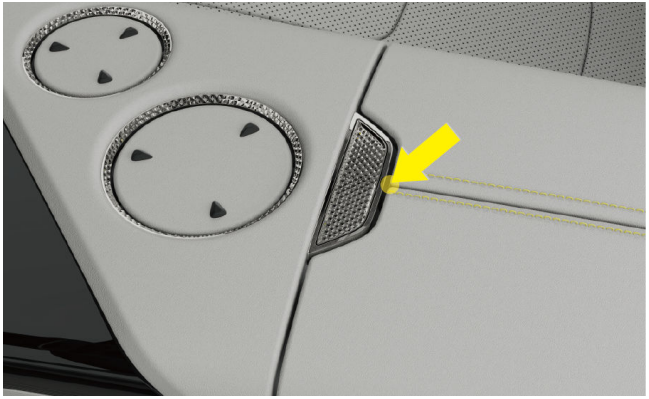


1. Data transmission interface (DTI)
2. Charging port

! Caution!

Do not connect external devices that are not suitable for this vehicle to the USB-C interface in the central armrest box, as this may cause the vehicle's electronic devices to malfunction.

Two USB-C ports are provided in the front armrest box. Data transmission interface supports data transmission between devices such as mobile phones, USB-C flash drives, tablets and the infotainment head unit (IHU), and can also be used to charge the devices. Charging port can only be used for charging devices such as mobile phones/tablets.



Extendible location

After the armrest is closed, the charging cable or data cable can be extended from the shown position.

Rear USB-C ports

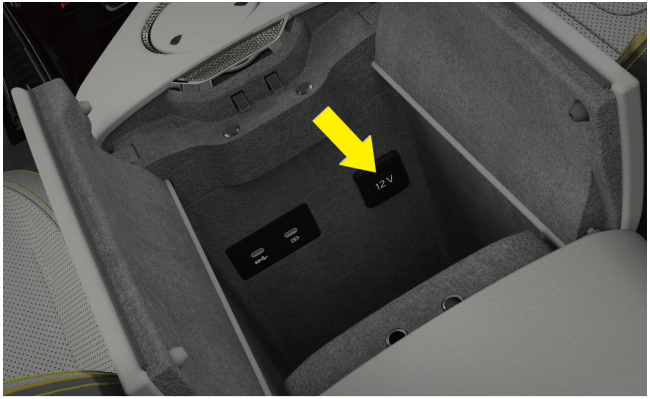


Rear USB-C ports

There are two USB-C ports in the lower centre of the rear seat cushion, which can be used by passengers for charging.

12V power supply

There are 12V power supplies in the front armrest box and the boot, which support a maximum power of 180W to charge the electronic equipment.



12V power supply in front armrest box

To use the 12V power supply in the front armrest box, please protective cover to the right.



12V power supply in boot

Before using the 12V power supply in the luggage area, press the left side of the protective cover. After releasing, the protective cover will automatically pop open. Press the protective cover again to close it.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not insert your fingers or conductive objects (such as pens) into the socket.
- Close the protective cover after use of the 12V power supply. Never allow water or any other liquid to come into contact with the socket.

- Connected devices may get hot during charging. Make sure that the hot devices will not endanger personnel safety or cause property damages.

Caution!

- Do not use electrical accessories with ratings greater than 12V or 180W, as this may cause the system to malfunction.
- Do not use equipment that may interfere with the radio receiver or electrical system of the vehicle.

Sun visors and vanity mirrors

Sun visors

Use the sun visors to block sunlight and avoid glare as required.



Sun visor

Flip down the sun visor to open it and adjust the angle as needed.



Flip the sun visor to the side

Flip down the sun visor to open it and adjust the angle as needed.

Vanity mirror

The vanity mirrors are installed on the inner side of the sun visors. Flip down the sun visor and flip up the vanity mirror cover to use the vanity mirror light will be illuminated automatically.



Open the vanity mirror

⚠ Warning!

Do not uncover the vanity mirror while driving, otherwise the light reflected from it may blind you and others.

Storage device

⚠ Warning!

If objects within the vehicle are not stored correctly, they may become projectiles, potentially hitting occupants within the vehicle.

Cup holders and open storage spaces may not always keep all items in place. There is a risk of injury in cases of sudden braking changes of direction particularly in the event of an accident.

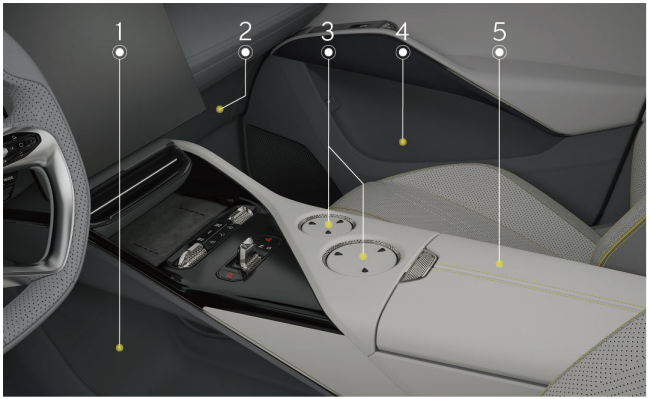
- Close the lockable storage spaces before driving.
- Always store objects so that they are secure.
- Always store and secure hard, heavy, sharp-edged, fragile or bulky objects in the trunk.
- Ensure that lids are fitted securely on any cups stored in the cup holders, particularly if the liquid is hot.

ⓘ Note!

The trunk floor may be damaged by an unevenly distributed load or an abrupt application of load.

- Distribute the load evenly.
- Drive carefully when the vehicle is fully laden. Avoid abrupt starts, braking and steering as well as rapid cornering.

Front storage device



Front storage device

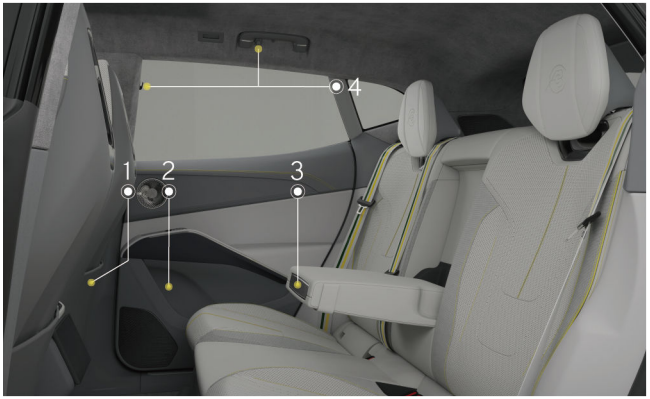
1. Front centre console lower pocket*
2. Glove box
3. Front liftable cup holder
4. Front door pocket
5. Front central armrest box

⚠ Warning!

If your vehicle has storage space under the front dashboard, please do not place items that cannot be placed flat, such as water cups, circular or cylindrical objects. Otherwise, in the event of an

emergency braking or collision accident, it may cause personal injury or damage to objects due to collision within the vehicle.

Rear storage device



Rear storage device

1. Backrest storage bag
2. Rear door pocket
3. Rear central armrest cup holder
4. Coat hook

⚠ Warning!

Small items should be stored in the glove box or other storage devices to ensure that they are fixed in place. Otherwise, they may cause harm to the occupants in the vehicle during a sudden braking or an accident.

Coat hook



Coat hook

Coat hooks are installed on both sides of the rear B-pillar and above the door for passengers to place clothes or hats.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not hang sharp or excessively hard objects to avoid personal injury.
- Do not hang clothes in a way that might obscure driver's view of the road.

ⓘ Note!

Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks to avoid damaging them.

Front cup holder

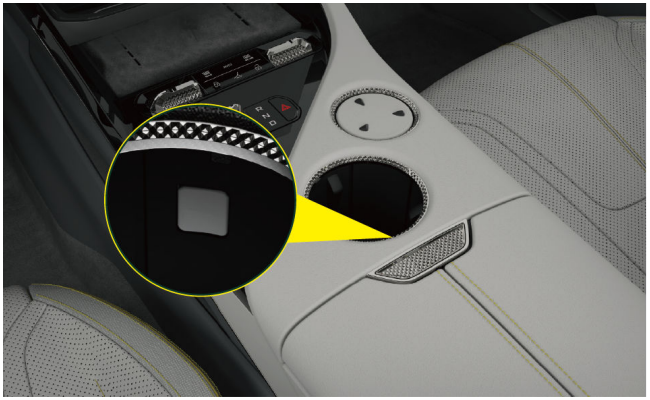


Liftable cup holder

There is a liftable cup holder on the front/rear centre console. To use the cup holder, press it until its bottom is locked, and then place the cup on the cup holder of the appropriate size. You can also place the cup on the appropriate holder and press the cup which will move the holder down and lock into position.

ⓘ Note!

Pressing the cup to move the cup holder to the bottom and lock it. A cup made of soft materials (such as paper cups, soft plastic cups) should not be used.



Cup holder unlock switch

Take the cup out and press the unlock switch to make the cup holder automatically rise to its original position.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not put hot drinks in the cup holder that is not tightly covered. Otherwise, they may spill when the vehicle bumps, causing personal injury or damage to vehicle components.
- After pressing the unlock switch, retract your hand in time to avoid pinch injuries during the automatic ascent of the cup holder.
- The cup holder claw should retain a normal cup. Please do not use your fingers or sharp objects to push the cup holder claw or use any other methods.

! Caution!

- Do not forcibly put an inappropriate container into the cup holder, otherwise, the container or cup holder may be damaged.
- When using the cup holder, you should pay attention not to allow tiny items and other debris falling into the cup holder, otherwise the cup holder may get stuck when lifting and lowering, affecting its use.

ⓘ Note!

In extremely low temperature environments, the automatic rise function may be slow or even inoperative.

Rear cup holders



Rear cup holder in closed state

Press the front end of the cup holder to make it automatically extend out from the centre armrest.



Rear cup holder open state

When not in use, push the cup holder back to lock back into the centre armrest.

⚠ Warning!

Do not put hot drinks in the cup holder that are not tightly covered to prevent scalding during vehicle movement.

! Caution!

- Do not force any inappropriate containers into the cup holder, otherwise the container or vehicle may be damaged.
- Do not operate the cup holder too quickly or frequently to prevent it from jamming or being damaged, which may affect its use.

ⓘ Note!

It is normal for the cup holder to pop out slowly or not at all in low temperatures.

Glove box opening/closing



Glove box switch

Click the glove box unlock switch on the front central control panel, the glove box will open automatically and the glove box indicator will illuminate.



Glove box

Push the glove box back to close and lock it, and the glove box indicator will extinguish.

⚠ Warning!

When driving, be sure to keep the glove box closed, otherwise sudden braking or a collision may cause injury to passengers inside the car.

ⓘ Note!

- If the glove box cannot be opened due to low power of the vehicle, please contact your Lotus retailer.
- In the low temperature environment, it is normal for the glove box to open slowly.

Pocket under boot floor



Pocket under boot floor

A boot storage box is provided under the boot floor, which can be used to store driver's tools.

Press the flip handle and pull up the rear section of the cover to open the boot floor.

⚠ Warning!

After lifting the trunk floor handle, retract your hand in time to avoid pinch injuries during the automatic closing of the handle.

ⓘ Note!

- Do not let the cover fall on its own when closing, and always use your hand to hold it to close slowly.
- When you need to remove the boot floor completely, you can press the flip handle to tilt the floor at a certain angle, and then use both hands to grip the left and right edges of the floor and pull it outward. Do not pull the flip handle outward alone to avoid damage to the flip bracelet.

Boot loading

There are hooks on the boot floor that hold the luggage in place. Before using the boot hook, flip the hook from the floor.



Boot load

⚠ Warning!

- Never use inferior or damaged binding strap, as they may break in the event of emergency braking or an accident, causing personal injury due to the luggage being thrown around in the boot.
- It is forbidden to use the hook to secure a child seats.
- No persons are permitted in the boot.

! Caution!

- When using the boot hook, ensure not to exceed the maximum pulling force of the hook.

- To prevent vehicle damage, it is not recommended that you install the roof rack without authorization.
- When loading heavy items in the boot, place them carefully. Dist ribute loads evenly. Do not stack heavy items in one area, and av oid storing heavy objects for extended periods.
- Do not place overly heavy items on it, otherwise the electrical components may be damaged.
- Do not remove the boot storage cover to place items.

Shade curtain



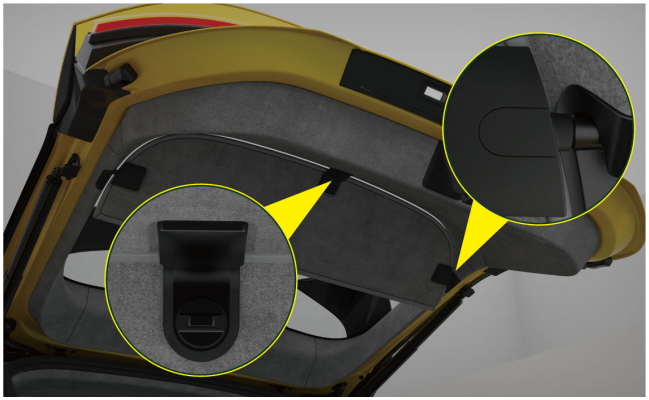
Shade curtain

There is a shade curtain behind the rear seats, which can be used to cover the items in the trunk.

With the tailgate open, pull the shade curtain outward to remove it.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not place any objects on the shade curtain. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, objects may fly forward, causing injury to occupants and damage to the shade curtain at the same time.
- Do not allow children to climb on or lean against the shade curtain.

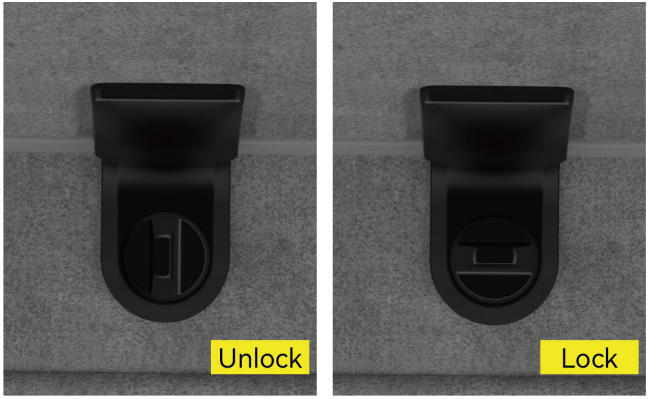


The fixed position of shade curtain

The shade curtain is mounted on the interior trim panel of the tailgate. You can clamp it onto the spindle at both ends, align the

knob with the fixing point of the tailgate, and rotate 90° clockwise to the horizontal position to lock the shade curtain.

To remove the shade curtain, you can turn the knob 90° anticlockwise to the vertical position to unlock it, undo the connection between the shade curtain knob and the tailgate, and then withdraw from the spindle.



Knob unlock/lock position

ⓘ Note!

- Please install the shade curtain correctly, resistance will be felt if not installed correctly.
- The turning angle of the flip plate should not exceed 60°, so as not to damage the plate structure.

Luggage rack*



Luggage racks are located on either side of the vehicle roof.

Loading luggage or cargo on the luggage rack will cause the centre of gravity of the vehicle to be increased, which, dependant on the size or weight, can have a critical impact on vehicle handling and steering. If you need to load luggage or cargo, etc. on the roof, please follow the following instructions:

- Do not load luggage or cargo larger than 80 kg on the roof of the vehicle.
- Distribute your luggage or cargo evenly over the rack, with the heaviest items at the bottom.
- Do not touch heavy or hard objects to the roof to prevent damage to the roof.

- Please drive smoothly and avoid sharp acceleration/braking and sharp turns.

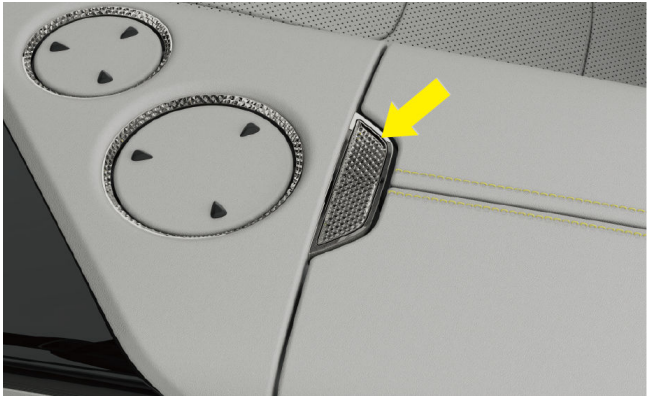
ⓘ Note!

Securely hold your luggage or cargo in place.

Center armrest

Front centre armrest

Front centre armrest



Opening/closing of front centre armrest box

The front central armrest is equipped with a storage box, and it can be opened by pressing the front central armrest switch.

Push and close the front centre armrest box cover in the opposite direction of opening.

⚠ Warning!

Always keep the front centre armrest box closed in the process of driving, otherwise it may cause an accident and personal injury.

ⓘ Note!

In a low temperature environment, it is normal for the front centre armrest box cover to open slowly.

Rear centre armrest

Rear centre armrest



Rear centre armrest

The centre armrest is installed in the middle of the rear seat backrest, which can be turned down and pulled out for use, and turned up and pressed back into the backrest for closing.

Towing mode*

This vehicle supports trailer towing.

Check all relevant local regulations for trailer towing first before towing. Regulations may differ between regions; you need to select a trailer of the appropriate size, consult your Lotus Retailer and trailer supplier before towing.

Use an electric tow hook



Electric towing hook switch

1. Open the tailgate, press the electric towing hook switch located in the boot. The electric towing hook will extend automatically.
2. Couple the trailer to the towing hook and connect the trailer plug to the socket.



Electric towing hook

The electric connector equipped with this vehicle uses a 13-core coil, and the standard used for the power outlet is ISO 11446:2004. The specific pin functions are as follows:

Pin No.	Colour	Function
1	Yellow line	Left direction indicator lamp
2	Blue line	Rear fog lamp
3	White line	General grounding line
4	Green line	Right direction indicator lamp
5	Brown line	Right running light
6	Red line	Brake light
7	Black line	Left running light
8	Pink line	Reversing light
9	Orange line	To battery
10	Grey line	Power switching (for refrigerator)
11	Black and white line	10-pin grounding line
12	Blue and white line	Towing inspection
13	Red and white line	9-pin grounding line

⚠ Warning!

- When this function is enabled, the electric towing hook will extend from the lower middle of the rear bumper, and at this time, you should pay attention to the area in the vicinity where

the electric towing hook extends to prevent it from hitting people or objects when it extends.

- Always drive the vehicle smoothly, especially when pulling away, and avoid sudden acceleration or braking on slippery roads, to prevent losing control of the vehicle due to slipping.
- Crosswinds and rough roads may cause the vehicle to swing, seriously affecting the handling of the vehicle. If you notice slight signs of the vehicle swinging under any driving conditions, be sure to hold the steering wheel with both hands and slow down.
- When a trailer is towed, the braking distance will be increased. Therefore, the distance from the vehicle ahead should be increased.
- When overtaking when towing a trailer, you must travel a longer distance from the vehicle you aer overtaking before returning to the original lane.
- When towing a trailer, make sure to turn smoothly, try to avoid bumping or sudden operation of the steering wheel, and switch on the direction indicator lamps earlier.
- When towing a trailer on a steep or long slope, you should slow down in advance. Control the driving speed according to the trailer mass and the gradient of the road.
- Try to avoid parking on a slope. If unavoidable, wedge blocks should be placed under the tyres of both the vehicle and the trailer, and the parking brake should be applied.
- When towing a trailer, the maximum permissible speed shall in no case exceed 100km/h.

Caution!

- Frequent operation of the electric towing hook will cause the motor to overheat and be damaged. Thus, when used under normal temperature, the electric towing hook shall unfold or retract at an interval. Under too low or too high temperatures, it is recommended to extend the time interval.
- Before driving, please ensure that for both the vehicle and trailer the tyre pressures are correct, the lights are working normally and the connections between the vehicle and trailer are correct.
- When towing a trailer, please abide by the relevant local laws and regulations, modifications without permission should not be performed.
- Always ensure that the goods are securely fixed on the trailer, and the trailer is kept level.
- Do not tow a trailer during the running-in period of a new car.
- Ensure that the electric towing hook is stowed when not in use.

Additional mirrors and brackets

The outside door mirrors of the towing vehicle shall meet the legal requirements. If not, please install suitable additional mirrors.

- Type 1: pasted on the surface of the outside wing mirror;
- Type 2: a bracket is mounted on the frame to clamp.

Technical parameter

The towing capacity of the vehicle will depend on the vehicle specifications, load, road conditions and the specifications of the vehicle to be towed, etc. Please refer to the table below for specific parameters.

Item	Parameters
Maximum allowable towing mass (with braking) (kg)	2,250
Maximum allowable towing mass (without braking) (kg)	750
Dimensional limit of centre axle trailers that can be towed (length/width/height) (mm)	12,000/2,550/4,000
Static vertical load of ball head (kg)	90
Traction device rear suspension (mm)	1,182
Ball joint	Comply with ECE R55 A CLASS for ball joint size.

Parking comfort

If you intend to remain in the vehicle whilst parked, you can turn on the parking comfort function to provide you with a comfortable resting environment. After turning on the parking comfort function, the centre screen display will continue to be available, and the air conditioning and multimedia functions can also be used normally.

To enable the parking comfort function, the following conditions must be met:

- The remaining power of the vehicle is greater than 20%.
- The vehicle is powered on or the vehicle is in READY state.

Click on the icon in the centre screen display, turn on or off the parking comfort function in the **vehicle** function setting interface.

You can also add a parking comfort button in the shortcut panel. Click the parking comfort button to quickly turn on or off the parking comfort function.

You can set the usage time of the parking comfort function according to your own needs, and set the usage time between 30 minutes and 8 hours or at irregular intervals (always on). After setting, click **Confirm** to use the parking comfort function.

When the parking comfort function is turned on or off, a pop-up window will appear on the centre screen display, and the left indicator light of the status bar will turn on or off.

Caution!

Locking the vehicle (from either the inside or outside), when using the parking comfort function, will only lock the doors, but not enable the alarm system. Do not leave the vehicle unattended for a long time periods after locking to avoid potential security issues.

Note!

- The parking comfort function can only be activated after the vehicle has completely stopped.
- Turn on the vehicle power, click **Confirm** to use the parking comfort function; when the vehicle is in the READY state, after clicking **Confirm** , open and close the driver's door, this will make the vehicle exit READY state and the parking comfort option is now activated.
- A pop-up message prompting you that the comfort parking option is in use, will appear in the centre screen display if you open the driver's door whilst the comfort parking option is activated. A prompt message will also appear for every 10% state of charge decrease remaining registered in the high voltage battery, reminding your to pay attention to the remaining battery power.
- During the use of the parking comfort function, if you leave and lock the vehicle, the parking comfort function will continue to work until the set time ends or the remaining battery state of charge is less than 20%.
- The parking comfort function does not currently support remote viewing and control through a mobile app. It needs to be turned on and off on the vehicle.
- The parking comfort function is valid for a single setting. When the set usage time ends, the vehicle power is turned off, or the driving is started, the parking comfort function will automatically exit. The next use requires a reset to enable it.

Exit Parking comfort

In the **Vehicle** function settings interface or shortcut panel, click **Parking comfort** again, and select **Cancel** to manually exit the parking comfort function.

During use, if the following situations occur, the parking comfort function will automatically exit:

- The set usage time timer has ended.
- The remaining power of the high voltage battery is less than 20%.
- The vehicle status is switched to READY state.



DRIVE |

Before you drive

Driving requirements

Drivers must obtain a driving licence before driving on the road.

⚠ Warning!

- Never drive under the influence of alcohol or drugs.
- Avoid fatigued driving.
- Never exceed the speed limit, or drive too fast for the current road, traffic or environmental conditions.
- The driver shall keep their hands on the steering wheel at all times during driving.
- All occupants are prohibited from extending their arms, heads or other body parts out of the vehicle during driving.
- Do not adjust the centre screen display, steering wheel, seat and inside/outside mirrors during driving, to avoid losing control of the vehicle..
- Be sure to install the floor mat correctly. Do not place objects in driver foot space. Otherwise, control of the foot pedals could be affected during driving.
- The driver should not be distracted by occupants or use electronic devices while driving.

Correct driving posture

The driver's sitting posture can have an affect on both driver fatigue and safety.

To ensure safe driving, adjustments as shown below should be made before driving:

- Sit upright with your feet on the floor.
- Adjust the driver seat forwards/backwards as necessary so that the driver can effectively operate the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal.
- Adjust the height of the headrest correctly according to your body height.
- The seat backrest should be in the upright position and the driver's back makes complete contact with the backrest.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that it is no less than 25 cm from the chest.
- Wrap the middle part of the seat belt between the neck and shoulders. Wrap the lap portion of the seat belt tightly around the hip joint (not the abdomen).

⚠ Warning!

If you get too close to the steering wheel, the driver airbag may fail to provide proper protection for you, which could result in injury or life risk.

Driving in low level water or flood conditions

Before driving in low level water or flood conditions, pay attention to the following matters:

- Confirm the water depth before driving, and make sure the water level does not go above the lower edge of the vehicle body. When driving through water, please be aware of water waves caused by nearby vehicles, because this may make the water level go above the lower edge of the body.
- Always pass through flooded roads at a low speed, and do not stop or drive backward in water under any circumstances.

After driving, carry out inspections as follows immediately if the vehicle is safe:

- Gently depress the brake pedal to dry the brake linings and check whether the brakes is working properly.
- Check that the horn is working properly.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering assist is working properly.
- Check that the exterior lamps are working properly.

Caution!

- The air suspension can adjust the height of the vehicle body, when you need to drive in low level water, please check the water depth of the waterlogged area first, the water level must not be higher than the lower edge of the vehicle body.
- After driving through low level water, it is recommended that you contact your Lotus workshop for inspection and maintenance as soon as possible.

Drive

Power on/off

Power on

After the car is unlocked and the doors are opened using a valid key, the driver and centre screen display will illuminate, and the car will be automatically powered on.

Power off

● Conventional power off

With P gear selected, and all doors (including the hood and tailgate) closed, if you exit the cabin with a valid key, you can power off the vehicle in the following ways:

- Lock the vehicle with a valid key.
- If the driver door is not reopened within 5 minutes, the vehicle will automatically power off.

● Centre screen display power off

Tap the icon on the centre screen display and tap **POWER OFF** in the **Vehicle** function setting interface, and the vehicle will power off after a short period of time.

Note!

- Power-off via the centre screen display can be restored by depressing the brake pedal.
- When there is no network signal in the vehicle, try to power on again after powering off for more than 10 minutes. If there is still no network signal, please contact your Lotus retailer.

● Emergency power off



Low-voltage MSD plug

Open the hood and disconnect the low-voltage MSD plug, and the vehicle will deactivate the high-voltage system automatically.

⚠ Warning!

Do not operate under the bonnet until the car automatically turns off the power supply for 3 minutes.

Note!

During the vehicle power-off, you will hear a sound, which is a normal phenomenon caused by the self-test of braking system.

Start

Vehicle starting with key fob*/Ultra-Wideband (UWB) digital key

You can enter the vehicle with the key fob/digital key on your person and depress the brake pedal to start the vehicle. With the gear shifter in R-Reverse or D-Drive, the car will enter driving mode.

⚠ Warning!

To avoid any unintended acceleration, you must press the brake pedal to shift into D or R.

ⓘ Note!

- The key fob will enter the sleep mode after being stationary in the vehicle for a period of time, and cannot start the vehicle until it is moved and exits sleep mode.
- Once the vehicle is in drive mode, the READY indicator on the driver display is illuminated.
- During charging, the car cannot be started by depressing the brake pedal, and the driver display will display and relevant prompt information.
- If the brake pedal is not depressed to shift, the prompt “Please depress the brake pedal to release the gear lever” will be displayed in the driver display.
- If the driver display shows that the key fob battery capacity is low, replace the battery as soon as possible, refer to **Replacement of key fob battery** (p.61).

Card key/Near Field Communication (NFC) digital key to start the vehicle



Starting with card key

If preferred, you can click on the icon on the central control screen, select **Vehicle** - **Valid time of NFC keyless start** set the NFC authentication free time.

When you unlock the vehicle using the card key/NFC digital key and start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal during the NFC authentication free period. If the NFC authentication time has expired and the vehicle has not been started, the central screen display will show a prompt message. The card key/NFC digital key must be placed in the wireless charging induction area, and the

vehicle can only be started after pressing the brake pedal. Select either R or D gears to activate drive mode.

ⓘ Note!

If you need to use the wireless charging function of your phone, you can place the card key in another position on the vehicle.

Shift operation

Move the gear lever to switch to different gears, the corresponding gear information will be shown in the driver display.



Gear lever

⚠ Caution!

P/R/D gear can be engaged under the following conditions:

- P gear can be selected when the vehicle speed is below 3km/h.
- R gear can be selected when the vehicle is driving forward at a speed less than 8km/h.
- D gear can be selected to when the vehicle is driving backwards at a speed less than 8km/h.

Before switching gears, press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle ensuring it is stationary.

Reverse (R)

To engage reverse (R) gear, press the brake pedal when the vehicle is stationary, and pull the gear lever forward and then release it.

Neutral (N)

To switch to neutral (N) gear from drive (D) or reverse (R) gear, move the gear lever forward or backwards.

ⓘ Note!

If moving at speeds greater than 3km/h, it will take a more time to shift from D or R gear to N gear, and the driver display will display a warning message accompanied by audible sounds.

Drive (D)

To engage into drive (D) gear, press the brake pedal when the vehicle is stationary, then pull the gear lever backwards and then release.

ⓘ Note!

- The brake pedal must be depressed to select any other gear if park - P is engaged.
- The reversing lamp is illuminated when the R gear is engaged.
- The brake pedal must be depressed to prevent the vehicle from slipping when the N gear is engaged.
- With either D or R gear is engaged, the vehicle will move forward/backwards slowly while the brake pedal is released and the accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- When the vehicle is in D gear, opening the main driving door, keeping the brake on, and switching the P-gear vehicle will issue a warning alarm, and accompanied by text prompts on the centre screen display.

Park (P)



Park (P) button

To park the vehicle, ensure the vehicle is stationary, then press the P button and the electronic parking brake will be activated.

When the gear is switched to any other gear, the electronic parking brake is automatically released.

When the vehicles high voltage battery is in a non-charging state, and all the following conditions are met, the vehicle will automatically switch to the park (P) gear:

- The vehicle is in READY state, the vehicle speed is below 3 km/h and the current gear selected is not P.

- When any two of the following conditions are met: the driver door is opened, the driver seat belt is unfastened, and/or the driver seat sensor does not detect occupancy.
- The accelerator pedal and brake pedal are depressed illegally.

Under the charging state, when all the following conditions are met, the vehicle will automatically switch to the park (P) gear:

- The vehicle speed is below 3 km/h and the current gear is not P.
- The charging plug is connected.

ⓘ Note!

Please ensure that the P gear is engaged before leaving the vehicle or when parking on a slope, otherwise the vehicle may roll forward or backwards.

If the service brake on the vehicle that is running at a speed higher than 3 km/h fails, pressing and holding the P gear button will trigger the emergency brake function, and releasing the P gear button will release the brake. If the vehicle speed is still higher than 3 km/h after releasing the P gear button, the current gear D/N/R remains unchanged; When the speed is reduced to 3 km/h or below, if the P gear button is still not released, the gear will automatically switch to P.

Acoustic vehicle alerting system

Electric vehicles produce relatively low noise when moving. This vehicle is equipped with an acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS) that can alert nearby pedestrians.

AVAS function cannot be deselected or turned off.

⚠ Warning!

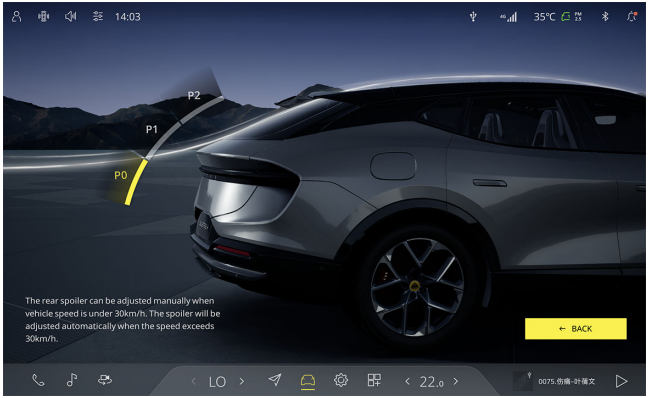
- Do not attempt to modify the vehicle's acoustic vehicle alerting system as this may cause the system not to function properly.
- If the acoustic vehicle alerting system does not work properly, please contact your Lotus retailer to arrange inspection.

Active rear spoiler*

The main purpose of the active rear spoiler is to provide additional down force to counteract the vehicle lift caused by airflow whilst driving at higher speeds, so increasing the vehicles grip to the road. The spoiler can be opened and the angle manually altered as required to either reduce aerodynamic drag or increase down force.

Manual control of the active rear spoiler opening or closing

Click the  icon on the centre screen display to enter the garage space interface, then click the  icon to access the manual control interface for the active rear spoiler.



You can manually adjust the active rear spoiler by clicking on the different positions available.

Click the icon on centre screen display and select **Vehicle** to open the **Spoiler always active** , when spoiler always active is turned on, the active rear spoiler will remain in the position set before the power is turned off. When spoiler always active is deselected, the rear spoiler will retract back into the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

- When manually opening or closing the active rear spoiler, please ensure that there are no obstacles around the active rear spoiler. Do not put your hands or any objects between the moving active rear spoiler and the body to prevent pinching or damaging the active rear spoiler.
- The active rear spoiler has an anti-clip function, but there is no anti-pinch function at the end of about 4mm.

! Caution!

- Do not use the rear spoiler to pull or push the vehicle.
- When using an automatic car wash, ensure to close the active rear spoiler, to prevent potentially damaging the vehicle.
- Please clean up the fallen leaves and other foreign debris under the rear spoiler to prevent them from entering the drain pipe after decay, resulting in poor drainage or blockage.

ⓘ Note!

- When the vehicle is running at a speed below 30km/h, the active rear spoiler can be manually adjusted; when the vehicle is running at a speed above 30km/h, the active rear spoiler adjustment interface in the centre screen display becomes grey to deactivate manual adjustment of active rear spoiler.
- The active rear spoiler has a memory function. If it was manually set to P1 or P2 before the vehicle was powered down, it will return to that same postion when the vehicle power is turned back on.

Automatic activation of the active rear spoiler

Set the active rear spoiler mode in Individual mode:

- Tour mode: when the vehicle speed is greater than 110km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to the position to provide low drag; when the vehicle speed is greater than 160km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.
- Sport mode: when the vehicle speed is greater than 110km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.

When the driving mode is in range mode or tour mode:

- When the vehicle speed is below 30km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically return to the manually set position;
- When the vehicle speed is between 110~160km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to the low drag position;
- When the vehicle speed is greater than 160km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to the high stability position.

When the driving in sport mode:

- When the vehicle is running at a speed below 30km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically return to the manually set position;
- When the vehicle is running at a speed above 110km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.

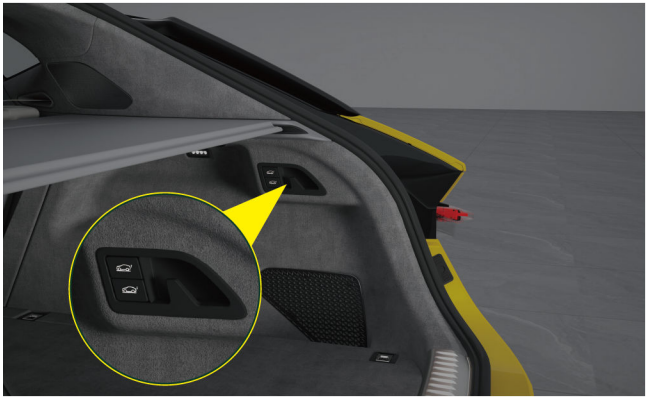
⚠ Warning!

Please observe local laws and regulations for safe driving and do not exceed the speed limit.

Air suspension

Convenient loading function

The vehicle is equipped with an adjustable air suspension system that selects an appropriate level of damping for each wheel depending on the driving conditions. The system automatically balances load changes and maintains a constant height during driving. The driving safety, agility and comfort are optimised.



Boot suspension adjustment switch

1. With the vehicle stationary an park - P selected. Open the tailgate and press the down button on the side of the boot. The rear of the vehicle can be lowered to an easier loading height.
2. After loading is complete, press the up button on the side of the boot or close the tailgate. When the vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h, the air suspension system will automatically raise the vehicle to the normal height.

⚠ Warning!

When using the convenient loading function, make sure that there is enough height under the tailgate, to avoid the risk of the tailgate hitting your head or other objects.

! Caution!

Frequent height adjustments may cause the air spring compressor to overheat and the regulation function to fail. After the air spring compressor has cooled completely, it automatically adjusts to the selected height.

ⓘ Note!

After the vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h, the air suspension system will only raise the body to the previous body height if the vehicle is driven smoothly without heavy braking/acceleration or excessive steering wheel steering.

Manually adjust the vehicle body height

You can click the icon on the centre screen display, and select the **Drive** to enter the body height adjustment interface, where multiple heights can be selected according to your needs.

ⓘ Note!

- The suspension height can only be manually adjusted when the doors, hood, and tailgate are securely closed, and the steering angle should not be excessively large during the adjustment.
- Only certain driving modes allow for manual suspension height adjustment.

Automatically adjust the vehicle body height

The air suspension can automatically adjust the body height based on different driving modes and changes in the current vehicle speed.

ⓘ Note!

After the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h, the **HIGHEST** body height option is not available; After the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h, the **HIGH** body height option is not available; After the vehicle speed exceeds 110 km/h, the **STANDARD** body height option is not available.

Off-road mode: when the driving mode is switched to Off-road mode, the body height is automatically adjusted to a **HIGH** height to achieve comfortable passage through rough roads. The body height can only be manually selected as **HIGH** or **HIGHEST** .

Sport mode: when the driving mode is switched to Sport mode, the body height is automatically adjusted to a **LOW** height, increasing vehicle stability and reducing energy consumption. The body height can only be manually selected as **LOW** and **LOWEST** . Whilst driving, the body height is always kept at low level no matter how much the speed of the vehicle changes.

Range mode: When the driving mode is switched to range mode, the air suspension will maintain the original body height unchanged.

Tour mode: when the driving mode is switched to tour mode from any mode, the air suspension will automatically maintain the body height at a normal height level, meeting the general driving needs of the driver when passing through urban roads or ordinary roads.

! Caution!

- If the vehicle needs to be lifted or jacked up, be sure to select the jack mode in the maintenance interface of centre screen display, and turn off the air spring automatic adjustment. If the auto-adjustment is not turned off, the air suspension automatically adjusts the lifting and lowering, causing serious damage.
- When the body height is lower than the height corresponding to the driving mode or there is a low air spring pressure alarm, please stop at a safe place and contact your Lotus retailer. If you continue to drive, the vehicle may be damaged.
- When the vehicle needs to use the tow hook to tow other vehicles select **Towing mode** (p.171). The air springs are automatically adjusted to a specific height and load compensation suitable for towing.

Active anti-roll bar*

The system monitors the vehicle's motion in real-time through sensors installed on the chassis and body. During cornering, the electric active anti-roll bar can provide greater roll support based on the vehicle's motion, thus reducing the body's roll angle and improving the vehicle's grip on the corner; When only 1 wheel of the

vehicle is making contact with a bumpy or uneven road, the electric active anti-roll bar can reduce the mutual influence of the up and down bouncing of the left and right wheels, reducing the impact of the road surface on the vehicle body, and improve driving comfort.

Do not drive on rough roads with a faulty active anti-roll bar, and maintain low speed when cornering. After parking safely, contact your Lotus retailer as soon as possible to arrange an inspection.

⚠ Warning!

- Never remove or modify any components of the suspension controller.
- Do not place any magnetic objects near the electric active anti-roll bar system to prevent damage to it.

Driving modes

- Individual mode: You can choose distinct suspension height and steering mode for different driving mode according to your personal preference, so as to obtain better driving experience.
- Sport mode: This mode meets the driver's more intense driving needs, and has a sensitive dynamic response.
- Comfort mode: It is a default driving mode, in which the driver can obtain a comfortable dynamic experience.
- Range mode: The energy consumption can be reduced in this mode, which can meet daily driving needs and improve range.
- Off-road mode: A higher suspension will be active in this mode, which is applicable to suburban, fields, grass, road covered by slight slow, etc.

⚠ Warning!

For your own safety and the safety of passengers and the vehicle, observe the following points:

- Familiarise yourself with the vehicle before starting a journey.
- Do not take any risks when driving.
- Adjust speed to the road conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road, the slower the speed should be.
- Avoid contact between the body and the ground.

! Caution!

Objects on unpaved surfaces, for example stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of material damage. Do not drive on unpaved surfaces.

Changing driving modes on the centre screen display

You can click the icon in the centre screen display , and select the **Driving** to enter the driving mode setting interface, where the different driving modes can be selected.

Changing the driving mode using the steering wheel paddles



Driving mode paddle

The driving modes can be changed by turning the driving mode paddle on the right side of the steering wheel.

Drive mode

You can click the icon in the centre screen display, select the **Driving** , and set the energy used for driving the vehicle in the drive mode on the driving mode setting interface.

- **EV** : The vehicle will start the engine only when the battery level is low or when strong power output is required.
- **HYBRID** : The vehicle will intelligently start the engine based on driving conditions.
- **ICEV** : You can set a power hold target between 30% and 85%. When the vehicle's battery level is lower than the set target, the vehicle will only use the engine for power supply while maintaining the state of charge of the high voltage battery.
- **Forced EV** : The vehicle will be forced to use the high voltage battery to provide power. The engine will be started only when the high voltage battery state of charge is extremely low.

In HYBRID mode, the vehicle will comprehensively take vehicle speed, energy demand and battery level into account, intelligently adjusting the engine start-stop and power distribution strategy to optimize overall energy consumption. This mode is suitable for users who have no charging conditions at their parking location but have access to public charging piles nearby, or users who drive long distances. After navigation is activated, the system will acquire your current location and road condition information (if you need to disable positioning, please return to the Safety Manager page to configure it). When navigation is activated and ends normally (and when the dynamic pure electric range is insufficient), additional fuel savings will be achieved, and the specific fuel saving amount will be displayed on the navigation end card.

You can tap the icon on the central display, select the charging app, and enter the energy consumption details screen to view the detailed energy consumption curve.

Steering mode

Electronic power assisted steering (EPAS) system

The EPAS provides assistance when the driver turns the steering wheel, enhancing vehicle's controllability and stability, improving steering handiness.

You can click the icon on the centre screen display, select the **Drive** , and enter the steering mode setting interface in individual mode, where the haptics and sensitivity of the steering system can be adjusted.

- Tour mode: ensures the sensitivity of the steering wheel while taking into account the road feedback, optimising the steering wheel effort required for normal daily use.
- Sport Mode: increases the force required to turn the steering wheel, enhances steering sensitivity and vehicle response speed, and provides a good driving experience.
- Sport + Mode: increases the force required to turn the steering wheel, enhancing steering sensitivity. When driving at high speeds, the vehicle responds more quickly, with clearer tyre grip and road surface detail feedback.

ⓘ Note!

When switching to different driving modes, the steering mode will automatically switch to the new mode selected.

Drive type

This is a four-wheel drive vehicle, which means that all four wheels are driven at the same time, thus increasing traction.

When the vehicle enters or exits a turn, the power will be automatically distributed to the front and rear axles as required to ensure vehicle stability, agility, efficiency and driveability, even under intense driving conditions.

The four-wheel driving mode improves the driving stability of the vehicle on wet and slippery roads, providing smooth acceleration and good comfort.

The drive performance of all wheels varies depending on the selected driving mode.

Active grille shutter (AGS)

The AGS automatically adjusts the grille opening, thereby reducing unnecessary heat dissipation from the bonnet. It quickly increases the coolant temperature during cold start of the vehicle and maintains the coolant within an appropriate working temperature

during driving, thereby improving the mechanical performance of the vehicle and the effect of heater at low temperatures.

⚠ Warning!

- Please ensure that there are no obstacles around the AGS, and do not put your hands or any objects into the moving AGS to prevent pinching or damage to the AGS.
- AGS has anti-pinch function, but there is no anti-pinch function around the last 4mm of travel.

! Caution!

Please slow down and drive at a speed 30km/h or lower when driving through low level water or a flooded road, otherwise the AGS may be damaged.



Symmetrical distribution of AGS

The AGS of the vehicle will be automatically turned on/off in any of the following usage scenarios:

- When the vehicle is locked, the AGS will be turned off.
- When proximity unlocking of the vehicle is enabled, the AGS will be turned on and off automatically once.
- When there are needs for air volume, the AGS will be automatically turned on.
- When the ambient temperature is too high, the AGS will be automatically turned on and kept on.
- When the vehicle speed exceeds 150 km/h, the AGS will be turned on automatically.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Click the icon in the centre screen display, and select **Vehicle ➔ MAINTENANCE** to check the tyre status.

- Tyre over-temperature, tyre leakage, low sensor power alarm

When the alarm of the tyre over-temperature, tyre leakage and low sensor power is activated, a prompt message will pop up and the corresponding tyre triggering the alarm will be shown in yellow in the centre screen display.

- Low tyre pressure alarm

When the low tyre pressure alarm is activated, the TPMS status indicator will be illuminated on the driver display, a prompt message will pop up and the corresponding tyre triggering the alarm will be shown in yellow in the centre screen display. After the tyre is inflated to the standard tyre pressure value in the cold state, the low tyre pressure alarm will disappear.

⚠ Warning!

- Should the TPMS status indicator illuminate or flash while driving, safely park the car and contact your Lotus dealer. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is always your responsibility to check and maintain the standard tyre pressure when cold, even if the TPMS telltale is not illuminated.
- Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and may lead to tyre failure and even accidents.

If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.



tyre pressure label

Note!

- Each tyre, should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure shown on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label.
- The TPMS can not provide an early indication of rapid tyre damage caused by external factors (e.g., burst), nor does it identify the natural, uniform pressure loss of all tyres over a long period of time.
- The TPMS receives the tyre pressure data the last time after the vehicle was stopped and powered on again, and can update the real-time tyre pressure value only after the vehicle is driven at speeds of 30km/h for several minutes.
- During the driving process, the tyre monitor system frequently collects data, therefore there may be a delay in displaying the tyre pressure value.
- Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

TPMS fault alarm

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Note!

- Only fit replacement tyres that are the same specifications recommended by Lotus, otherwise the TPMS may not work correctly.
- Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the

replacement tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Safe parking

Safe parking can prevent vehicle damage or safety accidents caused by improper operation. When you need to park safely, please follow the following steps:

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. After the vehicle is stopped, engage in P gear, to automatically apply the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake), the P i and EPB indicators will be illuminated on the driver display.
3. Release the brake pedal.
4. Be sure to take all valid keys with you when leaving the vehicle.
5. Make sure that all occupants (especially children) also exit the vehicle.
6. Lock the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

If a sharp metallic squealing noise comes from the vehicle brakes when the brake pedal is depressed, contact your Lotus retailer immediately for inspection and repair. This noise may be an indication that one or more of the brake pads has worn down to their minimum thickness, if so they must be replaced immediately.

! Caution!

- When parking on the uphill/downhill, be sure to pay attention to the surrounding environment, and check whether the vehicle is parked securely to prevent it from slipping.
- Observe all relevant legal regulations when parking.

On-board monitoring(OBM)

The on-board monitoring system monitors the vehicle's emissions status, battery energy consumption and other data while the vehicle is in motion. It will alert you if the emissions performance deteriorates or battery energy consumption becomes abnormal. You must take prompt action to meet environmental protection objectives.

Emission overlimit warning

When the on-board monitoring system detects excessive vehicle exhaust emissions, tampered system data or a system fault, the engine malfunction indicator lamp  on the driver display will be illuminated. The alert level will escalate the further you drive. You must contact your Lotus retailer at the earliest opportunity for inspection and repair.

Caution!

Should you disregard warnings issued by the on-board monitoring system, engine operation will be restricted upon expiry of the alert.

Environmental information

Tap the icon on the central screen display, and select the **Vehicle** ,Tap the **Environmental information** to view the vehicle's emissions and energy consumption data. Tap the **Green passport** , scan the QR code using your mobile phone and enter the vehicle VIN to view environmental information.

Braking system

Energy recovery

While the vehicle is moving, the driver can improve the driving experience by adjusting the energy recuperation, the electric drive motors participates in braking to reduce braking heat loss and thus improve energy consumption.

- Coasting energy recovery

The coasting energy is recovered when the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal are released.

Note!

When coasting energy recovery reaches a certain deceleration, the brake lights will illuminate.

- Braking energy recovery

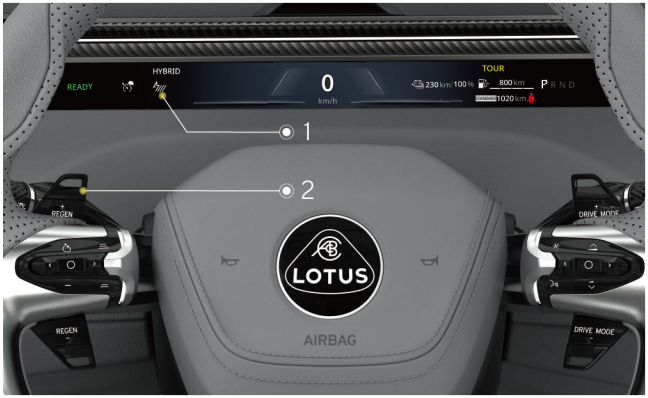
The braking energy is recovered when the driver depresses the brake pedal.

Factors affecting energy recovery efficiency

The energy recovery efficiency depends on the following factors:

- Current power and temperature of high voltage battery.
- Energy recovery levels.

Energy recovery levels



Energy recovery levels adjustment

1. Energy recovery levels
2. Energy recovery paddle

You can adjust the energy recovery level using the upper/lower energy recovery paddle on the left side of steering wheel.

The energy recovery level is adjustable in 4 levels, the default energy recovery level of the vehicle is low. Press "REGEN +" to increase energy recovery level to high; Press "REGEN -" to lower the energy recovery level to off.

The energy recovery level defaults to third gear each time the vehicle is started.

Caution!

The regenerative braking with energy recovery is not a substitute for braking to ensure safety. You should apply the brakes in time as required..

Note!

When the high voltage battery is fully charged, but the battery temperature is too low or too high, energy recovery braking will be temporarily weakened, please take care to monitor the battery information shown on the driver display and maintain a safe braking distance.

AUTO HOLD

With the AUTO HOLD switch on, if the vehicle needs to be stopped for a short time period, depress the brake pedal down firmly after the vehicle has stopped if on a flat road or facing downhill, AUTO HOLD will be activated and the AUTO HOLD indicator will also be illuminated on the driver display. It is not necessary to continue depressing the brake pedal when the vehicle is facing uphill, as the AUTO HOLD will be activated automatically and it will apply the brake for you to keep the vehicle stationary. The AUTO HOLD indicator will also be illuminated on the driver display. When you start driving by depressing the accelerator pedal, the AUTO HOLD will be automatically deactivated.

You can click icon in centre screen display to select the **Vehicle** and enable AUTO HOLD.

To deactivate the AUTO HOLD, click the control button on the centre screen display again.

Electronic parking brake (EPB)

Enabling/disabling

The vehicle is equipped with an electronic parking brake which is automatically activated/deactivated when changing between gears. Tap the icon on centre screen display and select **Vehicle** to turn on/off the electronic parking brake.

- With the vehicle stationary with P-Park selected, the electronic parking brake indicator in the driver display is illuminated, indicating that the electronic parking brake is activated.
- With the vehicle stationary, depressing the brake pedal and selecting either D or R gears will extinguish the electronic parking brake indicator in the driver display, indicating that the EPB is deactivated.

Caution!

If the indicator on the driver display flashes, the electronic parking brake is not operating normally or it is released, you can try to select between gears. If the indicator still flashes, contact your Lotus retailer immediately for maintenance.

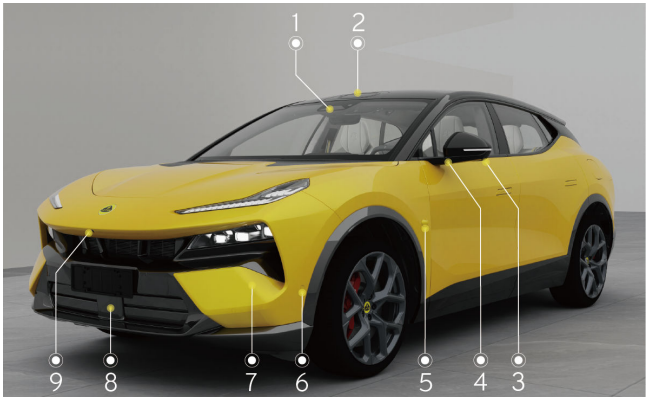
Intelligent driving system

Sensors and cameras

Driving assist system sensors

The car is equipped with radars and cameras, which are used to detect the distance from the vehicle ahead, identify traffic or road signs, and detect surrounding vehicles, pedestrians, etc.

Front sensors and cameras



Front sensors and cameras

1. Front camera
2. Front LiDAR*
3. Left/right surround camera
4. Outside front camera
5. Outside rear camera
6. Left/right long range ultrasonic radar
7. Left/right detection radar
8. Front long-range millimeter-wave radar
9. Front surround camera

Rear sensors and cameras



Rear sensors and cameras

1. Rear camera
2. Rear long range ultrasonic radar
3. Rear surround camera

Caution!

Laser irradiation of the cameras will cause irreversible damage. Avoid exposing the camera to laser irradiation. If a camera fails, please contact the Lotus retailer for maintenance.

ⓘ Note!

- When there is dirt or snow on any of the cameras, radars or the surrounding areas, a pop-up warning message will be shown in the centre screen display. If the warning message on the centre screen display does not disappear after the dirt or snow is removed, park the car safely and contact your Lotus retailer.
- Radar detection may be affected if objects/scenary are extremely different between the left and right sides of the carriagway (such as metal guardrails, concrete walls, kerbs and parked vehicles on one side and grass, soil and open areas of ground on the other), the radar detection may be affected, and a pop-up warning message may be shown in the centre screen display.
- Keep the front windshield clean and dry. Do not apply a metallic film to the front windshield as this could interfere with the operation of vehicles electronic sensors and devices.
- Repair or replacement of the driver assist system and its components must be done by qualified technicians using professional equipment, it is recommended that you contact your Lotus retailer for any such repairs.

Enabling LiDAR* (Light Detection and Ranging by Laser Imaging)

The LiDAR can be deployed automatically through the welcome function (performed at startup) and the activation of highway assist(HWA). It can also be deployed manually from the central display screen.



Enabling LiDAR (Light Detection and Ranging by Laser Imaging)

Open **Welcome show** and when the vehicle is unlocked, the LiDAR will automatically unfold and fold up.

⚠ Warning!

When deploying or retracting the LiDAR, ensure that there are no obstacles around it. Do not put your hands or any objects near the LiDAR as it deploys or retracts to prevent a pinching injury or damaging the LiDAR.

Caution!

- The LiDAR should be turned off and folded away before washing the car to prevent damage to components.
- In cold weather, do not wash the LiDAR with a water jet for a long time periods intentionally introduce water into the LiDAR mounting gap. The LiDAR could become frozen and may not extend correctly.



HWA switch

The front LiDAR can be deployed when the **HWA** is activated via the multi-function button on the left of the steering wheel. Refer to highway assist (HWA)(p.210).

When the vehicle is powered on and the gear lever is in the P position, you can click the icon on the centre screen display,select **Safety** , and unfold the front LiDAR with one touch in the driver assistance function.

The LiDAR cannot be deployed manually in any of the following conditions:

- The gear lever is not in P position.
- A LiDAR component has malfunctioned.
- The LiDAR is being automatically deployed or retracted.
- The LiDAR is being washed.
- The vehicle is bring driven.

Cleaning the LiDAR*

When the vehicle is powered on and the gear lever is in the P position, you can click the icon on the centre screen display, select **Safety** , and clean the front LiDAR with one touch in the driver assistance function.

Note!

- To prolong the service life of the LiDAR components, do not use the manual wash and manual unfold functions repeatedly within a short period of time.
- If there is air in the washer fluid tube, water may not be sprayed out of the washer jet. If this happens, try to turn on the wash

function several times to bleed the air, and the function should return to normal.

- The LiDAR wash function may consume a lot of washer fluid. Therefore, ensure that the washer fluid is sufficiently topped up before using the function. If the driver display shows that the washer fluid level is low, the washing performance will be degraded or the washer may not be usable at all.
- If white foam is generated during the cleaning of the LiDAR, wipe off the foam to avoid blocking your line of sight. It is recommended to replace the screen washer fluid with a low foam alternative.

Limitations of sensors of driver assist system

The drive assistance system sensors have certain limitations. In daily car use, you must pay attention to the following conditions, or the drive assistance system may not work properly:

- Do not attach accessories (such as registration plate decorative frames, decals, etc.) to the radars, cameras and their surrounding areas, as the efficient range of the sensors may be affected, causing part of the drive assistance system fail to operate normally.
- Adverse weather conditions, such as heavy snow, rain, fog, etc., may weaken the sensors or cause the system to temporarily stop working.
- Intense light, reflections on the road, icy or snow-covered roads, water on the road, dirty roads or blurred lane markings may significantly reduce the ability of the camera to identify vehicles, pedestrians, traffic signs or other obstacles.
- The radars may be subject to interference from other radio devices or strong radar reflections, thus generating false warnings or reducing detection accuracy.
- In some cases, the radar may detect vehicles later than expected or fail to detect a vehicle.
- When you are driving on a winding, narrow, steep road or driving into or out of tunnels, the radars may not be able to detect vehicles or other obstacles ahead.
- Do not hit the sensors and their surrounding areas hard.
- If there are cracks, scratches or stone chips in the bumper area around a radar sensor, the function may be affected.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) can maintain a constant driving speed between 0-150km/h and control the speed of your vehicle according to the set target speed and following distance to the vehicle in front. It can provide driving assistance for you when you are driving on roads with good driving conditions such as motorways, thereby reducing driving fatigue.

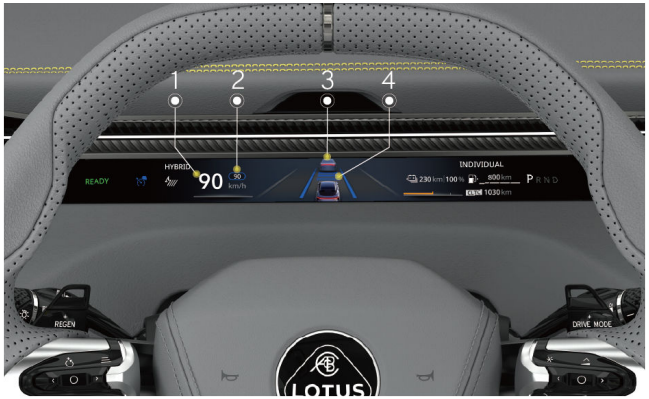
⚠ Warning!

- ACC is an auxiliary function that cannot replace you in driving or avoiding collisions. The maximum deceleration of ACC is limited, and it is always your responsibility to drive the vehicle safely and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.
- ACC can adjust the vehicle speed smoothly based on vehicle status and traffic conditions ahead. The system may fail to apply the brake in an emergency. When necessary, you should take the initiative to take braking when required to do so.
- ACC is not usable in all driving scenarios, traffic, weather and road conditions.
- You must intervene and override the vehicle immediately if ACC fails to maintain a proper speed or distance from the vehicle ahead.
- Repair or replacement of ACC and its components requires professional equipment and technicians, you should contact your Lotus retailer for any such repairs.
- ACC may fail to recognize animals, pedestrians, traffic signs (such as cones, water horses, signs, etc.), unusually-shaped vehicles, vehicles loaded with irregularly shaped cargoes or small vehicles such as bicycles, tricycles and motorcycles. ACC may also fail to recognize slow-moving, stationary or approaching vehicles or other stationary objects.
- Do not use ACC in environments with poor driving conditions, such as in heavily congested traffic, roads with water or slush, heavy rain and snow, poor visibility, windy conditions or driving on steep roads.
- In situations where the lighting conditions are not ideal at night or the road's lighting is refracted or scattered may lead to misidentification, missed recognition, or inaccurate recognition of the target by the camera, resulting in misbraking, failure to brake or delayed braking of ACC. In this situation, you need to use the ACC function with caution, keep your attention on the road at all times and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time.
- ACC will not respond to vehicles or objects crossing the lane in which your vehicle is being driven.
- Loading too many items in the boot may cause a change in vehicle attitude, which may degrade or disable the target identification of ACC.
- When another vehicle changes lanes in front of your vehicle, ACC may not have time to respond, requiring you to apply the brakes.
- When driving downhill on steep slopes, it may be difficult for ACC to maintain proper distance from the vehicle ahead. In these situations, be extra careful and always be ready to apply the brakes.

- When you are driving on a winding road, the identification of a target may be delayed or inaccurate, which may cause ACC to brake unexpectedly or brake too late.
- On a road with sharp turns, the ACC may not be able to detect the vehicle ahead as normal due to the limitations of the camera or radar, in which case, the vehicle may accelerate unexpectedly, so you need to override the vehicle appropriately according to the actual situation in front of you.
- When a vehicle in the adjacent lane ahead crosses in front of your vehicle, detection may be affected or delayed in some conditions. The reflection intensity from the target may be too small in the case of smaller vehicles, or electromagnetic interference could momentarily interrupt detection. As a result, ACC may fail to identify the target or it may calculate the distance to the vehicle ahead inaccurately. In this case, there may be no ACC response or the braking may be delayed, so you need to be prepared to override the vehicle.

ⓘ Note!

- If ACC fails, the icon will be shown in grey in the driver display to prompt you to override the vehicle.
- Take care when installing the front registration plate frame. A large metal registration plate frame will affect the output of ACC radar signal, which may lead to incorrect processing of driving data or a false warning given by the radar.



Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

1. Current speed
2. Target speed
3. Vehicle in front
4. Following distance

The following distance refers to the time required for your vehicle, at its current speed, to reach the current position of the vehicle ahead.



No target vehicle ahead is detected.



When ACC is not activated, a target vehicle appears ahead.



The subject vehicle is very close to the target vehicle in front. The safety distance is not respected.



ACC is active and a target is selected within a safe distance.

When ACC is active, you can change the following distance which is displayed on the driver display. Three values are available(near, medium and far). The selected value is memorized for next drives.

⚠ Warning!

You must maintain an appropriate speed and a safe distance and take braking actions in a timely manner if necessary.

ⓘ Note!

- ACC can control your vehicle to accelerate and decelerate. When the vehicle is decelerating, the brakes may be applied and may make a sound, which is normal.
- When your vehicle is following the vehicle ahead under the control of ACC and the following distance is too close, the autonomous emergency braking (AEB) may be triggered.

Activate ACC



Left multi-function button

When the vehicle is stationary, you can activate ACC with the following steps:

1. Scroll the left multi-function button leftwards to switch to ACC, the icon is displayed in white, and ACC enters ready mode.
2. Depress the brake pedal or activate the AUTO HOLD function.
3. Press the left multi-function button to activate ACC, the icon is displayed in blue.
4. After the brake pedal is released, scroll up the left multi-function button or gently depress the accelerator pedal, then ACC will control the car to start and drive at set target speed.

When the vehicle is moving, you can activate the ACC in the following steps:

1. Scroll the left multi-function button leftwards to switch to ACC, the icon is displayed in white and ACC enters ready mode.
2. Press the left multi-function button to activate ACC, the icon is displayed in blue.

Note!

When the car is driving at speeds below 30km/h, the speed set for cruising is 30km/h; when the car is driving at speeds above 30km/h, the speed set for cruising is the current speed.

Adjusting ACC



Adjusting ACC

1. Left multi-function button
2. Following distance button

When ACC is activated, you can set different target speeds and following distance as required:

- Target speed: when you scroll up or down on the left multifunction button briefly, the target speed will increase or decrease by 5 km/h. When you scroll up or down on the left multifunction button heavily, the target speed will increase or decrease in steps of 1 km/h.

ⓘ Note!

When ACC and automatic speed limit alarm are turned on at the same time, after automatic speed limit alarm recognizes the road traffic speed limit sign, you can tap the recognized speed limit sign on the centre screen display to quickly set the target speed.

- Following distance: scroll up or down the following distance button to increase or decrease the following distance (the interface displays one grid, which means that the distance from the car in front is closer, two grids, second, and three grids indicate that the distance from the car in front is farther).

⚠ Warning!

Always keep your vehicle at a safe distance from other vehicles. If the following distance is close, personal injury or vehicle damage may occur in the event of a traffic accident.

ⓘ Note!

- When no target vehicle is detected ahead, the ACC will control the vehicle to drive at the set target speed.
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed, the vehicle will accelerate temporarily. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will decelerate slowly to the set target speed.
- If the vehicle speed is not changed significantly with the ACC in operation, it may be because acceleration is not permitted due to the set following distance.
- The higher the vehicle speed, the longer the following distance is.

Avoid overtaking on the right

Click the  icon on centre screen display and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the avoid overtaking on the right.

When driving on a highway with ACC function activated, if the adjacent lane of your vehicle is a designated fast lane, your vehicle will be prohibited from overtaking the target vehicle with a speed greater than 85km/h in front of the adjacent fast lane.

Adjust speed to route

Click the  icon on centre screen display and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the adjust speed to route.

Under ACC function activation, the function will adjust the vehicle speed based on the upcoming road type and information, such as automatically slowing down when the vehicle approaches a roundabout.

Automatic speed adjustment

Click the icon on centre screen display and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the automatic speed adjustment.

After enabling automatic speed limit fusion, under the condition of ACC function activation:

When a new speed limit is recognized, it will be displayed on the left side of centre screen display. The speed limit will be automatically synchronized as the ACC target speed.

Deactivating ACC

Pressing the multi-function button on the left side of the steering wheel or pressing the brake pedal, the ACC will be temporarily deactivated, the icon will be white and the ACC will enter ready mode.

ACC is automatically deactivated when any of the following occurs:

- The wipers are at the highest level.
- Any one of the doors, bonnet and tailgate is opened.
- The driver seat belt is unfastened.
- Any of the road wheels lose grip.
- There is a system fault (such as camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.).
- The EPB is activated.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed to accelerate for more than 3 min or the vehicle speed exceeds 155 km/h.
- The ESC is deactivated or malfunctioning.
- The gear lever is disengaged from drive (D) gear.
- The front windscreen or the front radar area is covered by dust, rain, frost, snow or other dirt.
- The driving mode is switched to off-road mode or track mode.
- The hill control descent (HDC) system is activated.
- The trailer mode is activated.
- Triggering of the AEB.
- Triggering of the ABS.

The function cannot be activated when any of the above conditions are not met, and there is a prompt at this time.

⚠ Warning!

After ACC is deactivated, you must take over control of your car to ensure the driving safety.

Restoring ACC

When ACC enters ready mode, scroll up the left multi-function button, ACC will be reactivated, and the will illuminate blue.

Follow-up in cruising

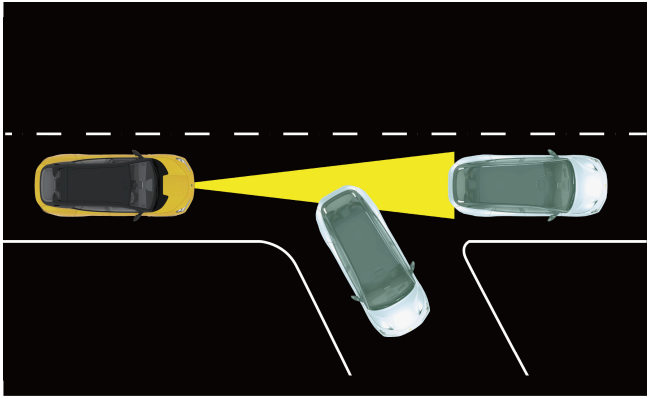
When ACC controls your car to follow the vehicle ahead, if the vehicle ahead decelerates gradually to stop, your car will also decelerates gradually to stop as the vehicle ahead does, with a safe distance maintained all the time.

ⓘ Note!

For a short period after stopping, the ACC can automatically follow the vehicle ahead and control your vehicle to start.

Change the target vehicle

When the adaptive cruise control (ACC) controls your vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead, if a vehicle cuts in from other lanes and moves between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead, the ACC will automatically select the new vehicle as the target vehicle. The following distance will also be adjusted based on the new target vehicle.



When ACC is activated, if the target vehicle your car follows suddenly turns and there is another stationary vehicle ahead, the system may not make any response to the stationary vehicle and may accelerate to the set target speed. At this point, you must actively pressed the brake pedal to brake and slow down your vehicle.

Limitations of ACC

The ACC is mainly suitable for driving on smooth roads. When ACC is used when driving downhill on steep slopes or with heavy loads, it may be difficult to maintain the correct following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Highway assist (HWA)*

The highway assist (HWA) can actively control the speed of your vehicle within speeds between 0~150 km/h and provide steering assistance according to the set target speed and following distance between vehicles. At low speed, HWA can control your vehicle to follow the target vehicle if any of the lane lines are blocked or invisible.



- **Reminder to hold steering wheel**

  With HWA on, when the system detects that the driver is not holding the steering wheel, a prompt for holding the steering wheel will be displayed on the driver display; If the system still does not detect the driver holding the steering wheel, a further prompt for holding the steering wheel will be display, accompanied by an audible reminder; If the driver is still not detected holding the steering wheel, a prompt for taking over the vehicle will be displayed on the driver display, accompanied by an audible reminder.

- **Minimum risk manoeuver (MRM)**

  If the driver continues to ignore the take over override prompt, a text alarm will be shown in the driver display to remind the driver to take over the vehicle, and the HWA will perform a minimum risk maneuver, which brakes the car smoothly to a full stop.

After the driver display prompts that HWA has exited, you need to scroll up/down the button on the left of steering wheel to restore HWA.

⚠ Warning!

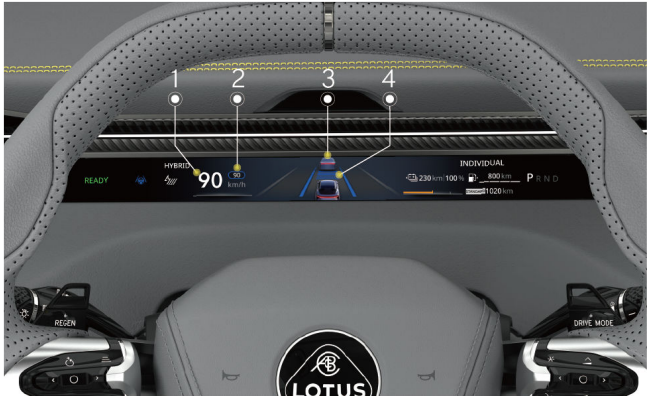
- HWA is only an auxiliary function, and the steering force provided by this function is only steering assistance, which cannot meet all road conditions and cannot fully achieve autonomous driving. You always have a responsibility to drive your vehicle safely and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.

- HWA can only be used on enclosed roads such as highways or bridges. However, you should always concentrate on driving and override the vehicle quickly in case of an emergency.
- You must override the vehicle immediately when HWA fails to maintain a proper speed or distance from the vehicle ahead.
- Loading too many items in the boot may cause a change in vehicle attitude, which may degrade or disable the performance of HWA.
- When another vehicle changes lanes to the front of your car, HWA may not have time to respond. At this point, you must apply brake in time.
- HWA is not a collision avoidance system, and it is your responsibility to apply braking in an emergency.
- When driving downhill on steep slopes, it may be difficult for HWA to maintain proper distance from the vehicle ahead. In these situations, be extra careful and always be ready to apply braking.
- HWA may not respond to animals, small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles, or stationary vehicles.
- When your vehicle follows the vehicle ahead at low speed, HWA can control the steering torque according to the trajectory of the vehicle ahead, in this way your vehicle can move laterally slowly as the vehicle ahead does. At this time, the driver is required to pay special attention to the traffic situation on both sides of the vehicle.
- HWA may not respond to vehicles or objects crossing the lane where your vehicle is driving on. You need to be attentive at all times, take braking measures and override the vehicle if necessary.
- When the HWA is working, if you depress the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will be overridden by you, responding to your acceleration need. The control by the HWA system will not be functioning.
- The selection of a target may be delayed or interfered with when driving into and out of bends in the road. HWA may brake unexpectedly or brake too late.
- If you are driving on serpentine roads or sharp turns, you should always be prepared to take over the steering wheel control direction. Due to the limited field of view of the medium range radar, HWA cannot detect the vehicle in front normally, which may cause the vehicle to accelerate. Therefore, do not use HWA in these situations.
- HWA may recognize road edges (walls, guardrails, curbs, grass, anti-skid paved strips, and asphalt joints) as lane lines during its operation, so you need to be alert to it.
- When the HWA function is activated, you should always be ready to take over the steering wheel, especially in corners. When traveling through winding, sharp turns, you should immediately take over the steering wheel control of the vehicle, do not use the HWA in this situation.

- HWA is an improvement of ACC, and ACC related precautions also apply to HWA.

ⓘ Note!

When the HWA fails, the icon is shown in grey to remind the driver to take over the control of the vehicle.



1. Current speed
2. Target speed
3. Vehicle ahead
4. Following distance

Status display for HWA



When HWA is not activated, no targeted car ahead is detected.



When HWA is activated, no targeted car ahead is detected.



When HWA is not activated, a targeted car appears ahead.



Your vehicle is very close to the target vehicle in front. The safety distance is not respected.



HWA is active and a target is selected within a safe distance.

⚠ Warning!

You must maintain an appropriate speed and a safe distance, and take braking actions in a timely manner if necessary.

Activating HWA



Left multi-function button

1. Press and release the left multi-function button rightward to switch to the HWA function, at this time the icon is displayed in white, and the HWA enters ready mode.
2. Press the left multi-function button to activate the HWA function, at this time the icon is displayed in blue.

When the high and fast road assist function is switched on, only the adaptive cruise capability can be switched on, with no steering assist, if the following conditions occur, Icon steering wheel in blue, lane lines in white:

- The turn signals are illuminated.
- Vehicle on lane lines, vehicle not in the lane or body at too great an angle to the centre line of the lane.
- The steering wheel steers to a certain strength.
- Roads are too narrow or too wide.
- Lane lines are not recognised for long time periods.
- Reduced road grip in snowy conditions.

Lane change assist

You can click on the icon on the centre screen display and select **Safety** to manually turn on or off the **Lane Change Assist** switch.

After the auxiliary switch for lane change is activated, the HWA can control the vehicle to automatically change lanes according to the direction of the turn signal by turning the vehicle's turn signal on.

⚠ Warning!

- This function is only for auxiliary driving, and you should always observe the surrounding environment of the vehicle before operation. You are always responsible for driving the vehicle safely and complying with current laws and traffic regulations.
- During the lane change process, you should always hold the steering wheel, pay attention to the road conditions, and focus on driving.

- Affected by the environment, if a vehicle automatically changes lanes on a solid line, you should take over the vehicle in a timely manner to avoid illegal or irregular operations.

ⓘ Note!

This function cannot achieve line changing in the following situations:

- When the lane change direction is the shoulder or solid line, it is impossible to change lanes.
- Other vehicles cannot change lanes when changing lanes.
- When other vehicles are merging into the lane, they cannot change lanes.
- Intervention during lane change, such as depressing the brake pedal, manually returning the steering lever, turning the steering wheel, etc.
- Exceeding the speed range of the function, the speed range of the lane change assist is 65km/h-150km/h.
- The current road is not a highway.
- The driver did not hold the steering wheel when changing lanes.

Adjust HWA

To set target vehicle speed and time-gap for HWA, please refer to **Adjust ACC** (p.202).

Avoid overtaking on the right

Click the ⚙ icon on centre screen display and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the avoid overtaking on the right.

When driving on a highway with HWA function activated, if the adjacent lane of your vehicle is a designated fast lane, your vehicle will be prohibited from overtaking the target vehicle with a speed greater than 85km/h in front of the adjacent fast lane.

Build emergency lane

Click the ⚙ icon on centre screen display and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the build emergency lane.

When build emergency lane function is switched on and there is a traffic jam on the current highway road, the HWA will start to build up space for the emergency vehicle by moving to the left or right in the current lane.

You can switch the build emergency lane function to **OFF** , **ON** or **AUTOMATICALLY** :

OFF : HWA will not build an emergency lane.

ON : HWA will always build an emergency lane when the operating conditions are fulfilled.

AUTOMATICALLY : HWA will automatically build an emergency lane when the operating conditions are fulfilled based on the country currently travelling in (Germany, Belgium, Croatia, Austria, Switzerland, Slovakia, Slovenia, Poland, Hungary).

Adjust speed to route

Click the icon on centre screen display and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the adjust speed to route.

Under HWA function activation, the function will adjust the vehicle speed based on the upcoming road type and information, such as automatically slowing down when the vehicle approaches a roundabout.

Automatic speed adjustment

Click the icon on centre screen display and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the automatic speed adjustment.

After enabling automatic speed adjustment function, under the condition of HWA function activation:

When a new speed limit is recognized, it will be displayed on the left side of centre screen display. The speed limit will be automatically synchronized as the HWA target speed.

Disable HWA



Left multi-function button

By pressing the left multi-function button or depressing the brake pedal, HWA will be temporarily deactivated, at this time the icon turns white, and HWA enters ready mode.

If the following situations occur, HWA will temporarily disable the steering assist with an acoustic warning and only maintain the ACC:

- You take over the steering wheel and turn to a certain force.
- Drive across the line to a certain width and for a certain duration.
- **Lane change assist** switch is off and the turn signal is on.

- The lane is too narrow or the lane line cannot be recognized for a long time.

If the following situations occur, HWA will automatically exit:

- The wipers are at the highest level.
- Any one of the doors, bonnet and tailgate is opened.
- The driver seat belt is unfastened.
- Any road wheel loses grip.
- There is a system fault (such as camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.).
- The EPB is activated.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed to accelerate for more than 3 minutes of the driving speed exceeds 155 km/h.
- The ESC is deactivated or malfunctioning.
- The gear lever is disengaged from drive (D) gear.
- The front windscreen or the front radar area is covered by dust, rain, frost, snow or other dirt.
- The driving mode is switched to off-road mode or track mode.
- The hill descent control (HDC) is activated is activated.
- The trailer mode is activated.
- Triggering of the AEB.
- Triggering of the ABS.

The function cannot be activated when any of the above conditions are not met, and there is a prompt at this time.

⚠ Warning!

After HWA is deactivated, you must take over control of your car to ensure the driving safety.

Recovering HWA



Left multi-function button

When the HWA enters ready mode, scroll up the left multi-function button, then HWA will be reactivated, and the icon will turn blue.

Limitations of HWA

HWA may not work properly when any of the following conditions or road environments occur:

- Roads with invisible lane lines.
- Lane deviations.
- Roads with vehicle imprints, such as tyre tracks.
- Roads with a large deviation between the original lane and the new lane.
- Roads with potholes, bumps, undulating pavement.
- Roads under construction.
- Roads that are too wide or too narrow.
- Roads where the lane lines are not straight.
- Roads with too small curves (such as ramps, hilly loop, etc.).
- Crossroads or lane deviations in the road.
- Roads with damaged or unclear lane lines.
- The driver actively controls the vehicle.

Lotus hyper pilot*

The advanced lotus hyper pilot function is only available for vehicles equipped with LiDAR hardware and an activated HWA driving package.

Lotus hyper pilot can set the cruising speed within 0~150km/h, and can control the vehicle to change lanes automatically according to the set navigation route and road conditions, drive into safe and fast lanes and enter/exit ramps automatically, assisting the driver in driving to the set navigation destination.

ⓘ Note!

When the vehicle speed is outside the range of 4 ~150 km/h, lotus hyper pilot will fail to control the vehicle to complete the automatic lane change.



- **Reminder to hold steering wheel**

  With lotus hyper pilot on, when the system detects that the driver is not holding the steering wheel, a prompt for holding the steering wheel will be displayed on the instrument cluster; If the system still does not detect the driver holding the steering wheel, a prompt for holding the steering wheel will be displayed on the instrument cluster, accompanied by an audible reminder; If the driver is still not detected holding the steering wheel,

a prompt for taking over the vehicle will be displayed on the instrument cluster, accompanied by an audible reminder.

- **Driver performance support**

  If the driver's gaze direction moves away from the area relevant to the current driving task, a text prompt of eyes-off-road will be displayed on the instrument cluster with an audible reminder; if the driver's eyes remain away from the area relevant to the current driving task, an escalated warning will be issued.

- **Safe parking**

  If the driver continues to ignore the override prompt, a text alarm will be displayed on the instrument cluster to remind the driver to override the vehicle, and the vehicle will also perform a safe stop.

- **Penalty mode**

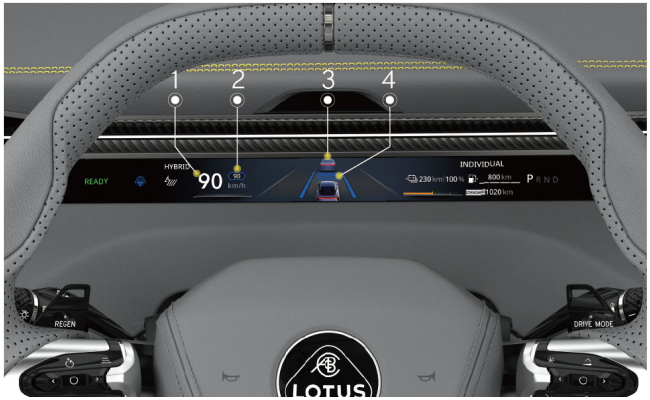
  Continuously ignoring the prompts to hold the steering wheel and eyes-off-road, Lotus hyper pilot will control the vehicle to slow down until it stops, and disable Lotus hyper pilot and highway assist for 30 minutes during the current driving cycle.

⚠ Warning!

- Highway navigation pilot is only an auxiliary function that can provide limited maximum steering and cannot fully achieve autonomous driving. It is always the driver's responsibility to drive the car safely and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.
- Highway navigation pilot can only be used on enclosed roads such as committed open highways or elevated roads. However, the driver should always concentrate on driving and override the vehicle quickly in case of an emergency.
- The driver must actively intervene when highway navigation pilot fails to maintain a proper speed or distance from the vehicle ahead.
- Loading too many items in the boot may cause a change in vehicle attitude, which may degrade or disable the performance of highway navigation pilot.
- When another vehicle changes lanes to the front of your vehicle, highway navigation pilot may not have time to respond, requiring you to apply braking in time.
- Highway navigation pilot is not a collision avoidance system, and it is your responsibility to apply braking in an emergency.
- When driving downhill on steep slopes, it may be difficult for HWA to maintain proper distance from the vehicle ahead. In these situations, be extra careful and always be ready to apply braking.
- Highway navigation pilot may not respond to animals, small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles, or stationary vehicles.

- When your vehicle follows the vehicle ahead at a low speed, highway navigation pilot can control the steering torque according to the trajectory of the vehicle ahead, in this way your vehicle can move laterally slowly as the vehicle ahead does. At this time, the driver is required to pay special attention to the traffic situation on both sides of the vehicle.
- Highway navigation pilot may not respond to vehicles or objects crossing the lane where your vehicle is running in. You need to be attentive at all times, take braking measures and override the vehicle if necessary.
- When the highway navigation pilot is working, if the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will respond to the driver's need to accelerate and the braking function will not work.
- The selection of a target may be delayed or interfered with when driving into and out of curves. Highway navigation pilot may brake unexpectedly or brake too late.
- On a sharp turning road, such as a serpentine road, the highway navigation pilot may fail to detect the vehicle ahead normally due to the limited field of view of the mid-range radar, in which case, the vehicle may be accelerated unexpectedly, which requires the driver to respond appropriately according to the actual situation.
- Highway navigation pilot may recognize road edges (walls, guardrails, curbs, grass, anti-skid paved strips and asphalt joints) as lane lines during its operation, so the driver needs to be alert to it.
- When the highway navigation pilot is activated, the driver should always be prepared to override the steering wheel, especially in curves. If passing through serpentine roads or sharp turns, the driver should always be prepared to override the steering wheel to control direction. Never use highway navigation pilot in such situations.
- When the highway navigation pilot is activated, the system has the capability to autonomously change lanes, enter and exit ramps, and fuse with speed limit, but it still requires the driver to keep an eye on the road and hands on the steering wheel, and If necessary, apply brake and override the vehicle.
- Highway navigation pilot is improved from ACC and HWA, and the considerations related to ACC and HWA also apply to highway navigation pilot.
- Due to the real-time changes in road information with changes in road planning, temporary construction, natural environment, etc., high-precision maps cannot be updated in real-time and need to be taken over in a timely manner in case of emergencies.
- Since the update of the high-precision map is time-sensitive and cannot be updated in time for road surface re-painting, temporary detours, etc., you should take control of the vehicle in time when encountering the following scenarios:

- The vehicle does not drive in the middle, seriously deviating to one side or even driving on the line.
- The vehicle has a tendency to change lanes while crossing the solid line.
- The vehicle has a tendency to cross the solid line or the diversion belt when merging into or out of the lane.
- The vehicle has other behaviors that do not comply with traffic regulations or have the risk of collision with obstacles such as curbs and cones.



1. Current speed
2. Target speed
3. Vehicle ahead
4. Following distance

Status display for Lotus hyper pilot



When lotus hyper pilot is activated, no target vehicle ahead is detected.



When lotus hyper pilot is not activated, a target vehicle appears ahead.



The subject vehicle is very close to the target vehicle it follows.



When lotus hyper pilot is activated, a target vehicle appears ahead and the subject vehicle follows it.

⚠ Warning!

You must maintain an appropriate speed and a safe distance, and take braking actions in a timely manner if necessary.

Activating lotus hyper pilot

Before using the lotus hyper pilot function, the following prerequisites must be fulfilled:

- Check that the vehicle is connected to a stable network.
- A function learning confirmation prompt will pop up after each OTA update and at the beginning of every calendar month. Please read and confirm this document.
- If the navigation function has not been activated previously, accept the relevant terms and conditions to complete activation. This operation is required after each OTA update or factory reset.
- Lotus hyper pilot can only be enabled on supported routes. before starting the navigation route to the intended destination, ensure the planned route falls within the supported coverage area. for route coverage information, please visit the following website: https://www.lotuscars.com/lotus-connect/lotus-hyper-pilot.
- Complete relevant privacy settings on the privacy setting screen.



When the vehicle is outside the route coverage supported by lotus hyper pilot, press the left or right button on the left multifunctional switch to select the icon in the instrument cluster, then press the confirmation button on the left multifunctional switch to activate the HWA function. The icon will illuminate in blue. Once the vehicle enters the route coverage supported by lotus hyper pilot, the HWA function will automatically upgrade to lotus hyper pilot.



When the vehicle is within the route coverage supported by lotus hyper pilot, press the left or right button on the left multifunctional switch to select the icon in the instrument cluster, then press the confirmation button on the left multifunctional switch to activate lotus hyper pilot. icon will illuminate in blue.

Note!

When you turn on the highway navigation pilot, the ASLA with cruising speed is turned on by default, and the system automatically takes the speed limit value of the current road as the cruising speed.

Adjusting highway navigation pilot

To set target vehicle speed and following distance for highway navigation pilot, please refer to **Adjust ACC** (p.202).

Deactivating lotus hyper pilot



By pressing the multi-function button on the left side of the steering wheel or depressing the brake pedal, the lotus hyper pilot will be temporarily deactivated, the icon will be displayed in white and the lotus hyper pilot will enter ready mode.

In the following scenarios, lotus hyper pilot will be degraded to HWA function and no longer rely on navigation for vehicle control. At this time, there will be changes in icons and sound prompts:

- Navigation is exited manually.

- Drive out of the coverage of high-precision maps.
- Poor positioning performance (e.g. long-term driving in tunnels, long-distance cross-sea bridges, etc.).
- Temporary road environment changes due to road construction and lane redrawing.
- Any side view camera system status is not OK.
- Vehicle speed is above the maximum allowed speed of the current country or region, but does not exceed 150km/h.
- Driver performance support (DPS) status is abnormal.

When the high and fast road navigation function is switched on, only the adaptive cruise capability can be switched on without steering assistance if the following conditions occur,  Icon steering wheel in blue, lane lines in white:

- Exit navigation manually
- Vehicle on the line, vehicle not in the lane or body at too great an angle to the centre line of the lane.
- The steering wheel steers to a certain strength.
- Driveways are too narrow or too wide.
- Lane lines are not recognised for long periods of time.
- Reduced road grip in snowy conditions.

If the following situations occur, lotus hyper pilot will automatically exit:

- The wipers are at the highest level.
- Any one of the doors, bonnet and tailgate is opened.
- The driver seat belt is unfastened.
- The wheels lose grip.
- There is a system fault (such as camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.).
- The EPB is activated.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed to accelerate for more than 3min or the speed exceeds 150km/h.
- The ESC is deactivated or malfunctioning.
- The gear lever is disengaged from drive (D) gear.
- The front windscreen or the front radar area is covered by dust, rain, frost, snow or other dirt.
- The driving mode is switched to off-road mode.
- The HDC is activated.
- The trailer mode is activated.
- Triggering of the AEB.
- Triggering of the ABS.

The function cannot be activated when any of the above conditions are not met, and there is a prompt at this time.

⚠ Warning!

After the advanced lotus hyper pilot is disengaged, maintain an appropriate speed and safe following distance, and apply the brakes promptly when required.

Restoring lotus hyper pilot



When the lotus hyper pilot enter ready mode, scroll up the left multi-function button, the lotus hyper pilot will be reactivated, the icon turn blue and the set speed will return to the speed set when lotus hyper pilot was last activated.

Lane center keeping

The system automatically assists the vehicle to keep driving in the center of the lane when the vehicle speed is within 0~150km/h and the lane lines are clear. During system control, the driver is allowed to operate the steering wheel and control the vehicle in the direction of control. When the driver no longer controls the steering wheel, the system automatically restores lane keeping control.

Limitations of lotus hyper pilot

Lotus hyper pilot may not work properly when any of the following conditions or road environments occur:

- Roads with invisible lane lines.
- Roads with forks.
- Roads with vehicle imprints, such as tyre tracks.
- Roads with a large deviation between the original lane and the new lane.
- Roads with potholes, bumps, undulating pavement.
- Roads under construction.
- Roads that are too wide and too narrow.
- Roads where the lane lines are not straight.
- Roads with too small curves (such as ramps, hilly loop).
- Crossroads or fork in the road.
- Roads with damaged or unclear lane lines.
- Reduced road grip in snowy conditions.

Forward drive assist

Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)

The autonomous emergency braking (AEB) alerts driver to pedestrians, cyclists, and vehicles through audible and visible alarms. When the driver fails to react to the warning signal from the forward collision warning and the situation continues to deteriorate, or when the driver presses the brake pedal but the braking force is insufficient, the AEB will intervene in time to apply limited braking to the vehicle, reducing the speed of the vehicle by a maximum of 60 km/h in order to mitigate the consequences of the accident.

The following conditions must be met for AEB to function:

- The driver fastens the seat belt and the four doors (including the bonnet and the tailgate) are closed.
- AEB is enabled.
- The wipers are not at the highest level.

ⓘ Note!

Due to the interference caused by external factors to the system, the system will inevitably have some false alarms.

AEB includes four systems to help avoid a forward collision. The four systems are described below and are: safety distance alarm, forward collision warning (FCW), dynamic bake support (DBS), and automatic emergency braking (AEB).

- Safety distance warning: the safety distance warning works in a non-emergency state. When the vehicle speed reaches 65 km/h and above, the safety distance warning is used to prompt you that the following distance from the vehicle ahead is too short, and the driving behaviour should be adjusted to maintain a reasonable distance.
- FCW: if the system determines that there is a potential risk of collision with the vehicle running at 4~150 km/h, it will alert you of the potential collision risk through the warning sound and the warning symbols on instrument cluster.
- DBS: when the vehicle is running at 4~150 km/h and above, if there is a danger but the current braking force applied by you is too small, the system will assist you to increase the braking force to avoid or mitigate collisions.
- AEB: when the vehicle is running at 4~150 km/h, if there is a danger but you does not apply effective braking, the system will intervene in time to apply AEB to avoid or mitigate collisions. If the car is provided with seat belt pretensioner, the seat belt will be pre-tensioned to protect the driver.

⚠ Warning!

- These systems provide an extra measure of safety, but they are installed only to assist the driver. These systems should

not be solely relied upon or over-relied upon as they may not operate correctly under all driving, weather, traffic, or road conditions (for example, they may not recognize a large truck in front of you). These systems are not a substitute for the driver maintaining complete control of the vehicle at all times, watching the road with hands on the steering wheel ready to take action and brake, closely paying attention to the task of driving, and driving in a careful and responsible manner.

- No driving assist system can function 100% under all circumstances. Therefore, you should never drive the vehicle towards pedestrians or objects for the purpose of testing the performance of AEB.
- AEB is a driver assistance system. You should always maintain an appropriate speed and distance from the vehicle ahead, and not wait for the issuance of FCW signals or for intervention of AEB.
- AEB cannot be used properly in all driving, traffic, weather or road conditions.
- Depending on the vehicle, the driving scenario and the road conditions, AEB system cannot always identify effected targets and assist you to avoid or mitigate collisions.
- This function will not be activated at a lower vehicle speed. Similarly, this system will not apply a brake when your subject vehicle is approaching the vehicle or pedestrian ahead at a lower speed.
- AEB does not respond to the following objects: including but not limited to road obstacles, walls, traffic lights.
- Even if HWA or ACC are activated, the driver always has the responsibility to monitor real-time traffic conditions. AEB cannot ensure the avoidance or mitigation of a collision in real time.
- When the current maximum braking force is applied through AEB, the vehicle speed can be reduced by 130 km/h to avoid or mitigate a collision. For example, when the AEB braking is triggered at a speed of 150 km/h, the braking force cannot continue to decelerate after it drops to a maximum of 20 km/h.
- When using the parking function, the low-speed AEB function will be suppressed.

Detect objects



1. Vehicle ahead
2. Alarm message

Status display for object detection



When the subject vehicle is too close to the front vehicle, the front vehicle turns yellow.



When subject vehicle is very close to the front vehicle, the front vehicle turns red.

ⓘ Note!

If ACC or HWA are not enabled, the driver display will not display the vehicle model but only indicates its colour in the middle of the upper edge.

The FCW warns you with audible and visual signals when your vehicle is about to collide with another vehicle or pedestrian ahead.

Status display for FCW



A car is detected in front.



A pedestrian is detected in front.



A cyclist is detected in front.

⚠ Warning!

You must maintain an appropriate speed and a safe distance, and take braking actions in time if necessary.

Setting AEB

You can click the icon on centre screen display and select **Safety** to enter AEB settings interface, where you can turn AEB on or off.

When the AEB fails, the indicator on the driver display is illuminated in yellow, the AEB switch on the centre screen display is gray and cannot be operated; when the AEB is turned off, the indicator on the driver display is illuminated in yellow.

ⓘ Note!

The AEB will begin with a self-check when the vehicle is started, and during self-check, it will not work.

Limitations of AEB

AEB may not work well in the following situations, and it is recommended that you do not over-rely on it:

- Driving on slippery roads: the braking distance of the vehicle will be extended on slippery roads.
- Strong exterior lighting: strong sunlight, reflections and extreme light contrast may make it difficult for the driver to see the image alarm, and they may also affect the detection function of the front-view camera.
- Vehicle cabin temperature: if the interior temperature is too high, the front-view camera may be temporarily disabled and the system may not issue an alarm.
- Reduced visibility in severe weather: heavy snow, blowing snow, rain, dense fog and dusty weather all have an impact on the windscreen and front bumper and may degrade system functions.
- Limited front-view camera/radar visibility: in some cases, the system may detect vehicles or pedestrians later than expected or fail to detect any person or object.
- Driver having strong initiative: if the driver actively manoeuvres/brakes the vehicle, the system may not react or react later than expected.
- During a turn or U-turn, the system may not respond or may respond with a delay compared to expectations.
- The road surface is uneven.
- There are metal interfering objects on the side of the road or on the roadside.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

⚠ Warning!

- Before driving, the driver should learn the limitations of AEB.
- The driver should keep applying braking force in the event of a danger even AEB is in operation.
- When the driver actively manoeuvres/brakes the car, the system may not react or react later than expected.

Evasive maneuver assist (EMA)*

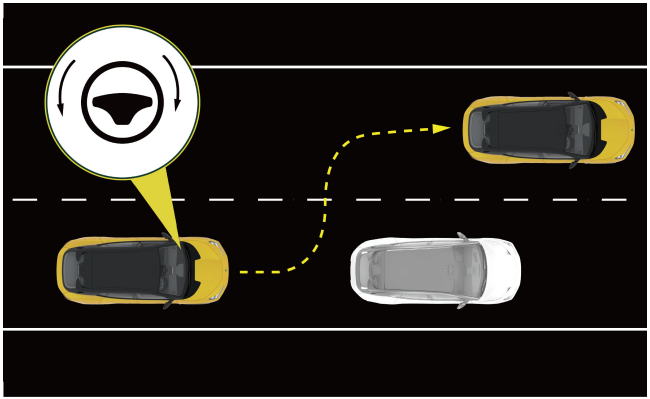
When the system detects that the driver operates the steering wheel to avoid an imminent collision but the steering force is insufficient, the evasive maneuver assist (EMA) will assist in avoidance by increasing the steering force.

If the driver intends to operate the steering wheel to return the car to its original lane after the obstacle is bypassed by increasing the steering force, evasive maneuver assist (EMA) will also assist in the returning.

ⓘ Note!

Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) will only work at vehicle speeds between 50~120km/h.

Interrupting evasive maneuver assist (EMA)



When evasive maneuver assist (EMA) is working to assist in obstacle avoidance, the driver can interrupt its operation by switching on the direction indicator lamps and depressing the accelerator pedal hard or turning the steering wheel reversely.

Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) does not work when any of the following systems are activated:

The vehicle is in towing mode.

Limitations of evasive maneuver assist (EMA)

Objects that evasive maneuver assist (EMA) can detect include pedestrians, two-wheeled vehicles (coaches, trucks, passenger cars).

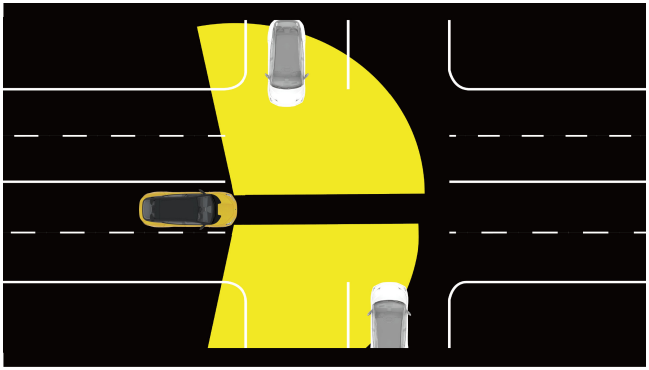
Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) may not work properly when any of the following conditions or road environments occur:

- Uneven road.
- Metal interference on the road or in the road.
- System misjudgement due to driver's operation.
- Slippery roads with water, snow or ice.
- Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) failure.

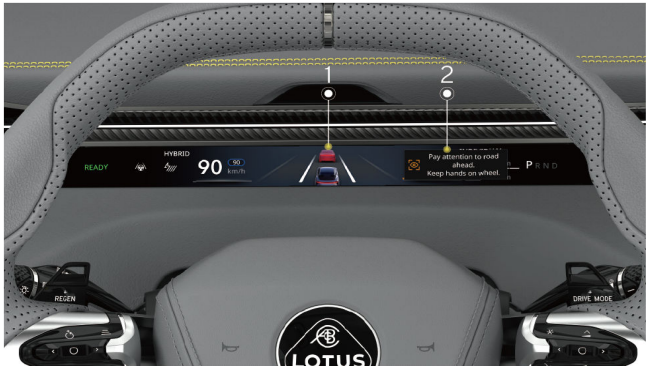
⚠ Warning!

Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) is only a driver assist system and cannot handle all emergency situations. The driver is required to pay attention, maintain a safe distance from other vehicles, comply with current laws and traffic regulations, and drive the car safely.

Front cross traffic alert (FCTA)



When you are driving out of the parking space or passing an intersection, if the front cross traffic alert detects that there is a risk of side collision from a vehicle in front, it will remind the driver to pay attention to the side oncoming vehicles.



1. Visual warning signal
2. Warning message

Note!

If ACC or HWA is not enabled, the driver display will not display the vehicle model but only a visual alarm on the left or right side of the upper edge.

When the system detects that there is a risk of colliding with cars crossing at front, it will alert the driver to note crossing cars ahead through audible and visual signals.

All of the following conditions must be met for front cross traffic alert to function:

- The speed of the target is 4~60 km/h.
- The speed of your is 4~60 km/h.
- The driver fastens the seat belt.
- The car is moving forward.

Note!

Due to the interference caused by external factors to the system, the system will inevitably have some false alarms.

When the front cross traffic alert fails, the indicator on the driver display is illuminated in yellow, the front cross traffic alert switch on the centre screen display is gray and cannot be operated; when the front cross traffic alert is turned off, the indicator on the driver display is illuminated in yellow.

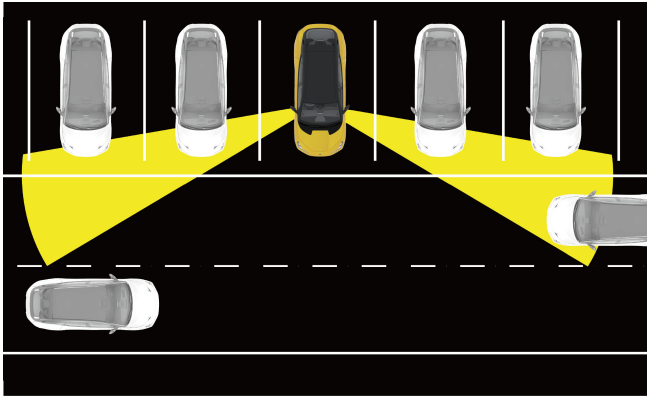
Note!

- When you are turning at a right angle or running through a T-intersection, the FCTA may issue an alarm if the turning speed of the target car is 4~60km/h.
- FCTA does not respond to the following objects: including but not limited to roadblocks (e.g., road cones, water-filled barriers), walls, traffic lights.

Limitations of front cross traffic alert

When the vehicle exits the parking space, radars on both sides may be blocked by surrounding vehicles and obstacles. In this case, front

cross traffic alert may not detect the front crossing vehicles in a timely manner.



Front cross traffic alert will not work properly under any of the following conditions:

- Uneven road.
- Metal interference on the road or in the road.
- System misjudgement due to improper operation.
- Road with low adhesion due to water, snow or ice.
- There is a system fault (such as camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.).

Lane keep assist (LKA)

LKA attempts to keep the vehicle in its own lane when your vehicle is about to deviate from its own lane due to driver distraction or other circumstances.

The LKA consists of lane departure warning (LDW), lane departure prevention (LDP) and emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA).



When LKA is activated, the driver is required to hold the steering wheel with both hands at all times. When the LKA is activated for the first time and the system detects that the driver is not holding the steering wheel, no prompt message will appear on the instrument cluster. If the LKA is activated again in the next period of time, and the system detects that the driver is still not holding the steering

wheel, it will prompt "Keep hands on wheel" on the instrument cluster. At the same time, the takeover prompt tone is issued.

When the vehicle deviates from its own lane again, LKA will be enabled again.

LKA can identify lane lines, pedestrians, curbs, and oncoming traffic ahead/behind and calculate the distance of your vehicle to the left and right lane lines and the oncoming traffic ahead/behind when the vehicle road speed is between 60~180km/h. When the car deviates from its lane or is leaving the lane, the system will alert the driver to keep the car in the lane by making a sound.

When the car deviates from the lane or is about to collide with a pedestrian or vehicle in the adjacent lane, the system will provide steering force to bring the car back into its own lane.

⚠ Warning!

- LKA is only to assist you and it may not function properly in all driving, weather, traffic or road conditions.
- Do not use this function on urban streets, construction areas, narrow roads, or areas where cyclists or pedestrians may be present.
- LKA cannot guarantee collision avoidance. It is always your responsibility to drive the vehicle safely.
- To ensure driving safety, it is not recommended to use the LKA function in extreme weather conditions such as snowy scenarios.

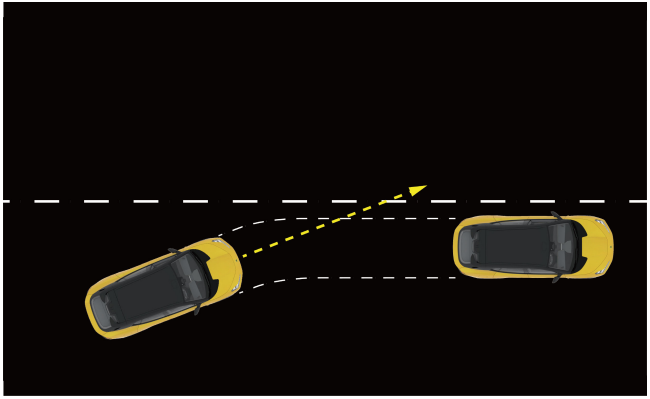
ⓘ Note!

Please hold the steering wheel correctly to avoid triggering the release alarm by mistake.

Lane departure warning

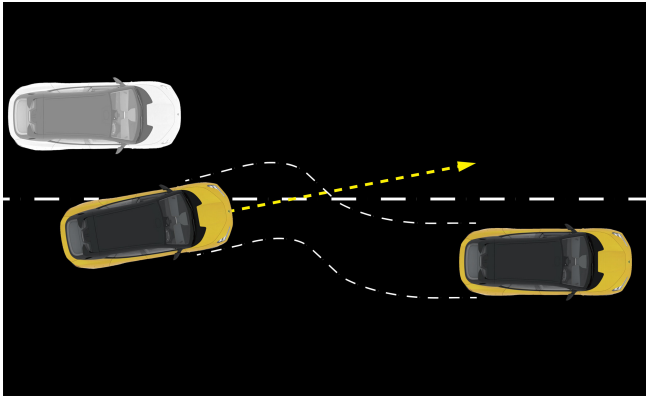
If you do not actively control the steering of the vehicle and the system detects that the vehicle is about to or has deviated from its own lane, the lane departure warning will remind you by generating a sound.

Lane departure prevention



If the driver does not actively control the steering of the car and the system detects that the car is approaching a lane line and there is a risk of deviation, the system will provide steering force to the steering wheel to bring the car back into its own lane. When the car continues to deviate from its own lane, the lane departure warning system, if activated, will issue an alarm to alert the driver.

Emergency lane keeping assist



Emergency lane keeping assist will actively control the steering system to help the vehicle return to its current lane if the system detects that the vehicle is deviating from its own lane and the following conditions are imminent:

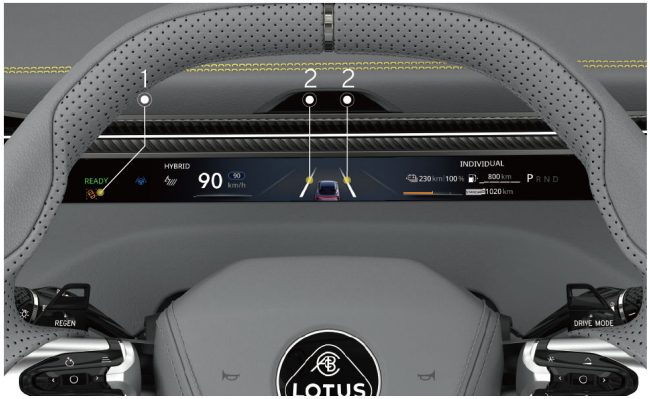
- The car is about to run off the road or collide with the curb.
- Collision with an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle behind due to an unintentional departure from the lane.
- Collision with a pedestrian in the adjacent lane due to an unintentional departure from the lane.

⚠ Warning!

You should maintain attention and judgement at all times, ensure that your vehicle is in its own lane, and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.

ⓘ Note!

- Lane keeping assist may not work when you are driving on sharp bends or narrow roads.
- During normal driving, the lane keeping assist will not intervene or give a warning if the direction indicator lamps are switched on or the brake pedal is depressed.
- Lane keeping assist may be limited or unavailable when the electronic stability control (ESC) is malfunctioning, deactivated or intervening.



1. Lane keeping assist status indicator
2. Lane lines



No lane line is displayed if it is not detected by lane keeping assist.



When lane departure warning is active, the lane lines are displayed in red.



When lane keeping assist is active, the lane lines are displayed in blue.

Setting lane keeping assist

Click the icon on centre screen display and select **Safety** to enter lane keeping assist setting interface where the lane keep assist can be set.

You can also click on the icon in the upper left corner of the centre screen display to quickly open the **Safety** interface.

When the lane keeping assist fails, the indicator on the driver display is illuminated in yellow, the lane keeping assist switch on the centre screen display is gray and cannot be operated; when the LKA is turned off, the indicator on the driver display is illuminated in yellow.

Limitations of lane keeping assist

It is recommended that you do not rely too heavily on lane keeping assist as it may not work properly in the following situations:

- The lane lines are not clear.
- The speed of the car is not within the working range.
- The driver actively steers.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA)

The automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) obtains road traffic sign information such as speed limit signs through the front camera, map and navigation information, and prompts you of the current road sign information through the instrument cluster in real time. If the vehicle is driving at a speed above the speed limit of the current road, the system will give warning in time, so as to assist you in driving properly.

Automatic speed limit alarm is used to alert you to current speed limits on the road, and helps you to keep driving at the legally prescribed speed and comply with local traffic restrictions.

⚠ Warning!

- Drivers must always keep their attention and judgment, actively control the speed and drive safely, and abide by traffic rules.
- Any automatic speed limit alarm system indications and warnings are without prejudice to the actual speed limit applicable in a particular situation, the observation of which and compliance with remain ultimate responsibility of the driver.
- If the speed limit sign is not clear or is twisted, inclined, irregular, partially occluded or covered, etc., the identification ability of the front camera will be impaired, resulting in misidentification or failure to identify.

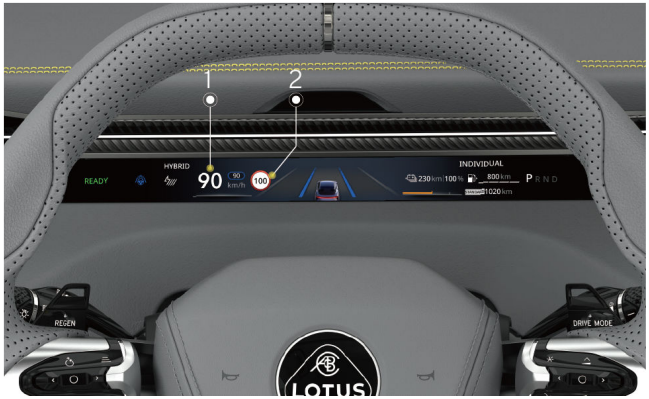
ⓘ Note!

- Generally, maps are automatically updated monthly via OTA updates.
- Maps are free to use for seven years, and the system works for 14 years.

ⓘ Note!

Automatic speed limit alarm can only identify traffic speed limit signs, and it is invalid for other traffic signs.

After automatic speed limit alarm recognizes the speed limit sign on the road, it will be displayed on the driver display in the form of an icon.



1. Current speed
2. Speed limit sign on current road

If the automatic speed limit alarm fails, the automatic speed limit alarm switch on the centre screen display is gray and cannot be operated.

ⓘ Note!

- Road sign information may not be displayed or be displayed inaccurately when the map data is incorrect, not updated, or inaccurately positioned.
- For other signs that are not standardized or not positioned as required, they may be recognized as speed limit signs/road signs, resulting in misidentification.
- The features of speed limit alarm/road sign recognition are affected by factors such as the field of view of the front camera, the relative position of the front camera and the speed limit/ road sign, etc., therefore the speed limit/road sign may be incorrectly identified or not identified.

Speed limit information identification



The alarm will be triggered when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system; The alarm will stop sounding when the vehicle speed is below the speed limit recognized by the system until a new speed limit is detected.

⚠ Warning!

The speed limit alarm only has the function to remind the speed limit. The driver must actively control the speed and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.

ⓘ Note!

- The speed limit sign of the current road is recognized, and the speed limit value is displayed; in case of recognition failure, "---" will be displayed.
- Automatic speed limit alarm can automatically position the vehicle and automatically detect the country where the vehicle is located, but the driver still needs to actively set the speed **UNIT** (KILOMETERS and MILES)(p.282) according to the road speed limit sign in different countries, otherwise the speed limit alarm may not work normally.

Setting speed limit alarm



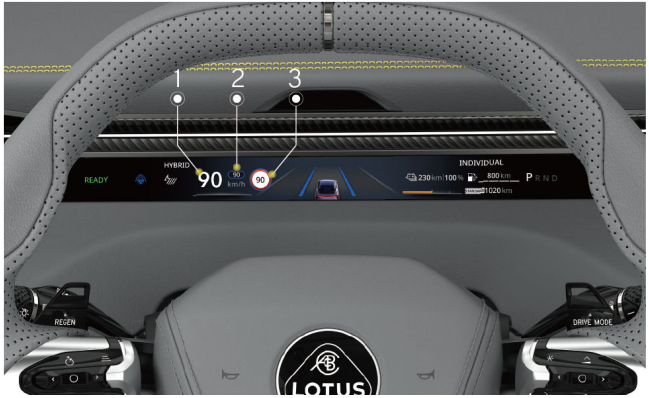
1. Automatic speed limit alarm
2. Set speed limit alarm
3. Automatic speed adjustment

You can click the icon on centre screen display as needed, and select **Safety** to enter the automatic speed limit alarm setting interface where you can set the speed limit alarm mode.

You can also click on the icon in the upper left corner of the centre screen display to quickly open the **Safety** interface.

You can also manually click to open the set speed limit alarm, drag the slider to any position of the set speed limit alarm slider to set the speed limit.

Automatic speed limit assist for cruising



1. Current speed
2. Target speed
3. Speed limit sign on current road

With the ACC/HWA and fusion with speed-limit enabled simultaneously, if the speed limit sign on the current road is detected, and the target speed currently set by ACC/HWA is higher than the speed limit, the system will automatically adjust the target speed to the speed limit value; if the target speed is lower than the speed limit, no change will be made.

Limitations of Automatic speed limit alarm

Automatic speed limit alarm may fail to identify or inaccurately identify road signs in the following conditions:

- Irregular road sign.
- Faded logo.
- Sign on a corner or bend.
- Rotated or damaged sign.
- Signs erected high above the highway.
- Signs that are completely/partially obscured or in a relatively obscure position.
- Signs that are fully or partially covered by frost, snow and/or dust.

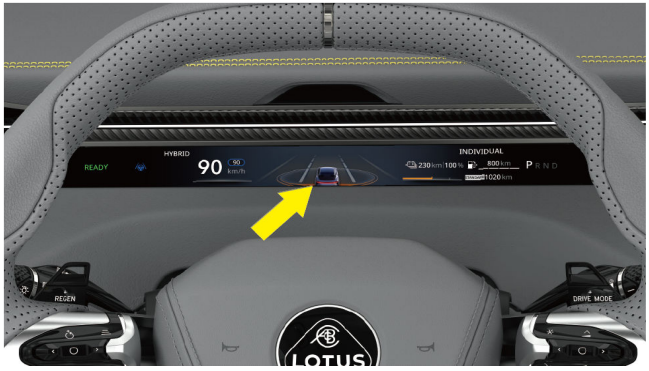
Rear drive assist

Rear collision warning (RCW)

If the rear collision warning (RCW) detects a risk of rear-end collision when the car is driving at a speed between 0~150 km/h, it will alert the driver through audible and visual signals, and trigger the hazard warning lights to turn on, alerting the driver of the vehicle behind to brake.

ⓘ Note!

- The vehicle is at rest (non-trailer state) after starting. When the gear lever is in non-R gear and there is a rear collision risk and the collision cannot be avoided, when the vehicle is stationary, the system will request the vehicle to apply brake automatically to reduce the risk of the car slipping forward after being rear-ended and to avoid a secondary collision between the subject vehicle and the vehicle ahead.
- When the turn signal, hazard warning light, and emergency brake light are turned on, rear collision warning (RCW) will not be triggered to activate the hazard warning light.



Visual alarm signal



When the following car is close to your car, the rear of your car turns yellow.



When the following car is very close to your car, the rear of your car turns red.

ⓘ Note!

If the ACC or HWA are not enabled, the driver display will not display the vehicle model but only indicates the corresponding colour in the middle of the lower edge.

If the RCW works in non-R gears and the vehicle does not slip backwards, then the following targets approaching from the rear can be detected:

- Bicycles.
- Motor vehicles.
- Electro-mobiles or motorcycle.

RCW may not work when the vehicle is under any of the following conditions:

- In reverse (R) gear.
- In towing mode.
- The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
- ESC is deactivated.
- Any of the vehicle doors (including the bonnet and the tailgate) are not closed.

Setting RCW

You can tap the icon in the centre screen display, and select **Safety** to enter the RCW setting interface, where the RCW function can be activated or deactivated.

Note!

When the RCW is malfunctioning or does not work properly, the indicator will be illuminated.

Limitations of RCW

It is recommended that you should not rely too much on RCW, as it may not detect a target or work well in the following cases:

- Adverse weather such as snow, fog, etc. that affects the system and prevents the target from being detected.
- The target vehicle approaches after changing lanes from another one.
- There is a system fault (such as camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.)

Blind spot detection (BSD)

The blind spot detection (BSD) covers blind spot areas as well as the area of other vehicles travelling rapidly towards the side and rear, helping the driver to be more alert to blind spots and vehicles coming from behind, especially when turning or changing lanes.



Visual alarm signal

ⓘ Note!

If ACC and HWA are not enabled, the driver display will not display the vehicle model.

BSD works when the car is driving at a speed between 15~150km/h.

When BSD is working, the BSD indicator on the door mirror will be illuminated or flash, accompanied by an audible alarm, and a visual alarm signal will be displayed in the driver display.

If your vehicle is equipped with a streaming mirror, the blind spot monitoring indicator illuminates or flashes on the streaming mirror display with an audible alarm while BSD is working.

⚠ Warning!

Do not rely too much on BSD. To ensure the safety of lane change, you must remain vigilant and need to make good observations and judgements of the surroundings before changing lanes.

BSD may not work when the vehicle is under any of the following conditions:

- In reverse (R) gear.
- The vehicle is in towing mode or not moving.

Setting BSD

Click the icon in the centre screen display, and select **Safety** to enter the lane change safety and warning setting interface, where the BSD warning method can be selected.

ⓘ Note!

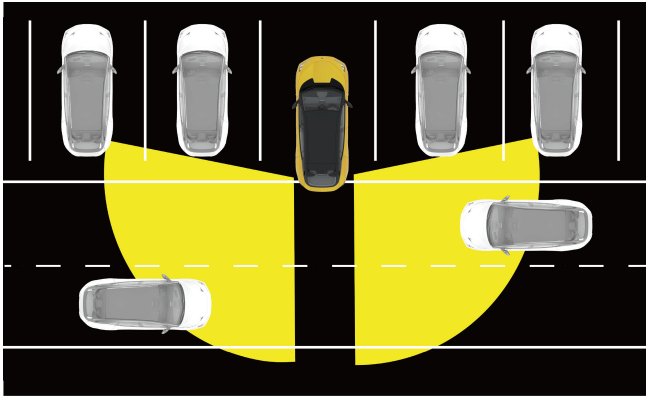
When the BSD is malfunctioning or does not work properly, the indicator will be illuminated.

Limitations of BSD

In any of the following cases, the BSD may not detect the target or work well, and it is recommended that you do not rely too much on the BSD:

- Adverse weather such as snow, fog, etc. that affects the system and prevents the target from being detected.
- The driver changes lanes without switching on the direction indicator lamp.
- The target vehicle is small or moving slowly or stationary.
- The car is making a sharp turn or in an open area.
- The target vehicle is approaching very quickly or very slowly.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA)



If there is a risk of a lateral collision at the time when the driver reverses from the parking space or garage, RCTA will alert the driver to notice the rear side of the vehicle and brake if necessary to avoid or mitigate a collision.



Visual alarm signal

ⓘ Note!

- If the ACC or HWA are not enabled, the driver display will not display the vehicle model but only a visual alarm on the left or right side of the lower edge.
- RCTA does not respond to the following objects: including but not limited to road obstacles (e.g., road cones, water-filled barriers), walls, traffic lights.

In addition to visual alarms in the driver display, the following alarm forms will also be presented to remind the driver of car coming from

behind when the system detects that there is a risk of rear lateral collision:

- The BSD indicator on outside mirror is illuminated.
- A hazard warning is shown on centre screen display.

If your vehicle is equipped with a streaming mirror, the blind spot monitoring indicator illuminates or flashes on the streaming mirror display with an audible alarm while BSD is working.

The following conditions must be met for RCTA to function:

- The gear is shifted to N or R and the car speed is below 18km/h.
- The target is running at 0~97km/h relative to your car.
- The driver fastens the seat belt and the four doors (including the bonnet and the tailgate) are closed.
- ESC is enabled.
- The vehicle is not in towing mode.
- RCTA is enabled.

⚠ Warning!

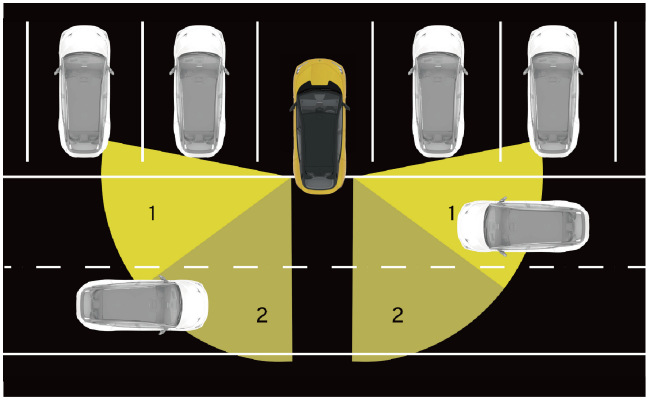
To ensure safe reversing, you have to look around and make sure your surroundings are safe before reversing.

Setting RCTA

Click the ⚙ icon in Vehicle Settings interface, and select **Safety** to enter RCTA setting interface, where you can turn on or off the RCTA.

Limitations of RCTA

When the car reverses from the parking space or the garage, radars on both sides may be blocked by surrounding cars and obstacles. In this case, RCTA may fail to detect the rear crossing cars in a timely manner.



1. Blind spot
2. Detected area

In any of the following cases, the RCTA may not detect the target or work well, and it is recommended that you do not rely too much on the RCTA:

- Adverse weather such as snow, fog, etc. that affects the system and prevents the target from being detected.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Door opening warning (DOW)

When the car is stationary or driving at a low speed, the DOW system detects moving objects approaching from behind and the sides. When there is a potential risk of collision when opening a door, the BSD indicator on the door mirror will be illuminated or flash, accompanied by an audible alarm, to remind the driver and passengers that opening a door may result in a risk of collision.

When the system predicts that there is a risk of collision at the time of opening a door, it will not allow the driver and passengers from using the door switch to open the doors, but the emergency handle can be used a normal to open the door.

ⓘ Note!

If the door cannot be opened normally due to the system, you can use the emergency handle to open the door.

DOW sign



If DOW detects a target and there is a risk of collision when the door is being opened, the indicator on the outside mirror will be illuminated or flash, accompanied by an audible alarm, a DOW symbol and message will be shown in the driver display.

If your vehicle is equipped with streaming mirrors, the blind spot monitoring indicator illuminates or flashes on the streaming mirror display with an audible alarm.

ⓘ Note!

DOW starts to work after the vehicle is powered on; if DOW fails, the indicator will be illuminated and relevant messages will be shown

in the driver display, please contact your Lotus retailer as soon as possible.

Setting DOW

You can click the icon in the centre screen display, and select **Safety** to enter the DOW setting interface, where the DOW function can be activated or deactivated.

Limitations of DOW

DOW does not work when the vehicle is in towing mode.

In the following cases, the DOW may not detect a target or work well, and it is recommended that you do not rely solely on DOW:

- Adverse weather such as snow, fog, etc. that affects the system and prevents the target from being detected.
- Targets approaching from the side and rear of the car are moving too fast.
- The target is small or moving slowly or stationary.
- On sharp turns, downhill roads, quite narrow or wide lanes.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Brake assist system

Comfort stop (CST)

Comfort stop (CST) can provide a more comfortable braking experience when decelerating and stopping in non emergency situations. In the process of lightly depressing the brake pedal, the CST can reduce the forward inclination of the vehicle, making it smoother to slow down and stop.

- The CST is enabled by default when the vehicle is in range mode, comfort mode or individual mode.
- The CST is disabled by default when the vehicle is in sport mode or off-road mode.

You can click the icon in the centre screen display, and select **Vehicle** to set the brake pedal style.

When the vehicle is in motion, keeping the brake pedal depressed for an extended period may cause the brake disc temperature to become too high, resulting in a deterioration of braking performance (such as during a long downhill descent). The brake system malfunction indicator light on the combination instrument will illuminate, and a pop-up reminder will be displayed. If you ignore the warning and continue to use the service brake, causing the brake disc temperature to rise further, the brake system malfunction indicator light on the driver display will illuminate

again, and a pop-up reminder will be displayed. For your driving safety, please stop the vehicle and wait for the brake system to cool down before continuing to drive.

⚠ Warning!

To ensure driving safety, please set the brake pedal style when the vehicle is stationary and on level ground.

! Caution!

The comfortable brake stop function will slightly increase the braking distance, please ensure that you allow sufficient space in front of you for the increased braking distance required to stop the vehicle.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The electronic stability control (ESC) can improve driving stability and safety by altering the driving torque output or applying braking force to individual wheels when the vehicle is unstable.

⚠ Warning!

- ESC is an auxiliary system, which cannot handle all situations or road conditions. It is always the driver's responsibility to drive the car safely and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.
- Do not modify the suspensions of the vehicle. Otherwise, the ESC cannot function properly, and the manoeuvrability of the vehicle may be adversely affected.

Setting ESC

You can click the icon in the centre screen display and select **Vehicle** to enter the ESC setting interface, set to **STANDARD** , **DMP SPORT** or **OFF** .

⚠ Warning!

The stability control applied to the car will be reduced when ESC is deactivated.

ⓘ Note!

- If the car becomes stuck on snow, sand or other loose road surface conditions, deactivating ESC may allow the driving wheels to spin freely and gain traction. When activated indicator on the driver display will be illuminated.
- To ensure driving safety, when the ESC status switches from **STANDARD** to **DMP SPORT** or **OFF** , a message will appear in the centre screen display, requiring you to confirm again whether to switch the functional status.

Anti-locked braking system (ABS)

ABS can prevent the wheels from locking up when the driver is applying the maximum braking force. It improves the car's steering control in emergency braking situations under most road conditions.

⚠ Warning!

- On rough, gravel or snow-covered roads, the braking distance may be longer than on normal roads.
- ABS is a supplementary system, not capable of managing every circumstance or road condition. The driver is always responsible for driving safely and adhering to all traffic laws and regulations.

ⓘ Note!

- If the ABS function is activated during braking, the driver may feel a pulsing sensation through the brake pedal and a clicking sound coming from the bonnet area. This is a normal result of ABS activation and not a fault.
- In special working conditions (such as high-speed turns, sharp turns, etc.), you will feel a continuous "clunking" sound coming from the cabin, which is caused by the operation of vehicle stability related functions, rather than a malfunction.

Electronic brake-force distribution (EBD)

Electronic brake-force distribution (EBD) ensures good braking performance and stability of the vehicle under different load conditions by regulating the distribution of braking forces between front and rear wheels and controlling the slip of rear wheels.

Corner traction control (CTC)

Corner traction control (CTC) assists in controlling the vehicle to pass through a bend in the road at high speed. When the inside wheels begin to slip, CTC will apply the braking force to them, and increase the torque applied to the outside wheels through the differential, so as to improve the cornering ability of the vehicle.

ⓘ Note!

When cornering under extreme driving conditions, there may be a sound, which is considered normal.

Traction control system (TCS)

The traction control system (TCS) can intervene in the output torque of vehicle according to the degree of wheel slip, and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle to achieve a smooth start and improve the vehicle's driving ability and stability.

ⓘ Note!

TCS is a function that is enabled by default in ESC, and it will activate when accelerating and starting on slippery, gravel roads or roads where the grip of the wheels on both sides is inconsistent.

When the car is starting on a completely wet and slippery road, the indicator on the driver display will flash if any of the wheels slips. TCS can reduce the torque output of the powertrain to reduce slip and allow the car to accelerate quickly.

When the car is starting on a split road with one side slippery, the indicator on the driver display will flash if any of the wheels slips. TCS improves the car's drive ability and stability by applying braking force to tyres on the side with low adhesion.

If continuous operation of TCS leads to over-temperature of the brake discs, the TCS will be deactivated, and a message will be shown in the driver display to remind you that the brake disc temperature is too high.

⚠ Warning!

- The driver should maintain attention and judgement at all times to ensure the driving safety and override the car when necessary.
- TCS is a supplementary system, not capable of managing every circumstance or road condition. The driver is always responsible for driving safely and adhering to all traffic laws and regulations.

Hill descent control (HDC)

HDC controls the speed of the car through automatic braking intervention. When driving downhill, the driver does not need to continuously depress the brake pedal to control the speed of the car. The current speed of the car can be maintained automatically, so the driver can focus more on controlling the steering wheel. HDC mainly works when the car is running downhill on rough or slippery long steep slopes.

The driver can still depress the accelerator pedal to increase speed temporarily, or depress the brake pedal to slow down or stop the car at any time.

⚠ Warning!

If the HDC is working continuously while the car is running downhill on a long slope, the temperature of the brake discs may be too high, in which case, the HDC will be deactivated temporarily, and the indicator on the driver display will be illuminated to remind the driver to take over the vehicle.

If the HDC is activated during downhill driving, the indicator on the driver display will be illuminated, and the car can maintain as speed between 4~35 km/h. When the speed is less than 4 km/h, the speed is maintained at 4 km/h after the brake pedal is released; at a speed of 35 to 40 km/h, the speed is maintained at 35 km/h when the brake pedal is released.

ⓘ Note!

- After HDC is turned on, HDC is only activated when the vehicle is running downhill at low speed on a steep slope.
- At speeds above 60 km/h, HDC is deactivated and disabled automatically.
- When HDC is deactivated, the braking force gradually decreases until it disappears.

⚠ Warning!

- The driver should maintain attention and judgement at all times to ensure the driving safety and take over the car when necessary.
- HDC is a supplementary system, not capable of managing every circumstance or road condition. The driver is always responsible for driving safely and adhering to all traffic laws and regulations.

Setting HDC

Click the icon on centre screen display and select **Vehicle** to enter the HDC setting interface.

Enable HDC, and the icon on the driver display will be shown in grey, indicating that the vehicle enters ready mode.

Brake assist system (BAS)

The brake assist system (BAS) detects the speed/urgency at which you depress the brake pedal to determine whether it is an emergency braking situation. When you do not apply enough force to the brake pedal or the pedal travel is insufficient to provide sufficient braking force, the system may increase the brake pressure automatically.

ⓘ Note!

- The BAS will not work when the ESC fault indicator remains on, in such a case please contact your Lotus retailer as soon as possible.
- BAS is a supplementary system, not capable of managing every circumstance or road condition. The driver is always responsible for driving safely and adhering to all traffic laws and regulations.

Anti roll-over program (ARP)

The anti roll-over protection (ARP) is an active safety system that keeps the vehicle stable by detecting its driving condition and applying braking force to the outside wheels before the vehicle loses stability.

⚠ Warning!

You should maintain attention at all times while driving to ensure the driving safety and override the vehicle when necessary.

ⓘ Note!

ARP is enabled by default in the ESC to prevent the vehicle from rolling over due to your sharp turning of steering wheel When the ARP function is activated, the ESC malfunction indicator lamp  on the driver display will flash.

Hill start assist (HSA)

The hill start assist (HSA) helps prevent unintended vehicle movement when driving away on an incline. HSA will keep the vehicle stationary on a slope for a short time (approximately 2 seconds) after the brake pedal is released.

HSA is operational when the gear lever is set to drive (D) or reverse (R) position and the EPB is deactivated.

⚠ Warning!

- HSA is not a substitute for the electronic parking brake (EPB). The driver should shift gear to Park (P) and enable the EPB when leaving the vehicle.
- If the vehicle starts to slip backwards, the brake pedal should be depressed immediately. HSA may not be able to prevent the vehicle from sliding down a steep incline under all load conditions or all road conditions.
- When starting on an incline, never press the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal simultaneously.

Post impact control (PIC)

The post impact control (PIC) can automatically control the vehicle to stop or reduce its speed after the impact, avoiding or mitigating the risk of subsequent impacts.

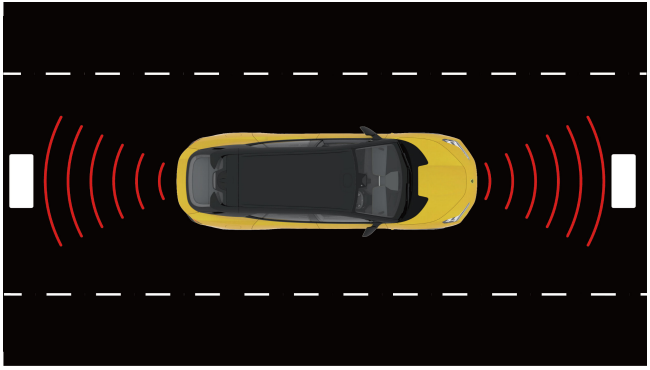
ⓘ Note!

When PIC is working, you may hear a continuous sound like rattle from the bonnet, and also feel a vibration from the brake pedal. This is a normal and is caused by the operation of ESC, not a malfunction.

Park assist system

Parking assist (PA)

When the vehicle is moving at speeds between 0~15km/h, the parking assist (PA) can detect and warn of obstacles in the front and rear sides of the vehicle, and alert you of the risk of collision through audible and visual warnings.



The PA system includes parking assist front (PAF) and parking assist rear (PAR), and all of the following conditions need to be met for the system to work:

- The car is powered on.
- P gear is not selected.
- PAF and PAR are turned on.

⚠ Warning!

For safety reasons, the driver must remain vigilant all the time and always check vehicle surroundings.

The functionality of the ultrasonic sensors can become limited under the following conditions, and messages such as "ultrasonic radar is limited", "please remove the coverings of the front parking radar", "please remove the coverings of the rear parking radar" may appear, due to (but not limited to) the following reasons:

- One or more ultrasonic sensors are limited, misaligned, or obscured (e.g., by sludge, snow, ice, or a car cover).
- Under bad weather such as rain, snow, fog, and haze.
- The sensor is affected by other electrical equipment or devices that can cause interference.

Ultrasonic sensors may fail to detect irregularly shaped obstacles, low obstacles, obstacles made of certain materials, etc. In this regard, you should always remain vigilant and always check their surroundings. Otherwise, this may cause an collision resulting in property damage or personal injury. These obstacles include but are not limited to:

- Pedestrians, children, or animals.
- Open ground locks, low stone piers, cylinders, thin rods, sharp objects, potholes in the ground, etc.

- Height-limited doors, rods or suspended structures.
- Obstacles at the side of the body that can cause collisions and scratches.
- Bicycles, corners, square columns and corners of parking lot, plastic foam, snowdrifts, etc.

ⓘ Note!

- If the ultrasonic radar is dirty or obstructed, please clean or remove the cover in time.
- If any ultrasonic radar sensor fails, the PDC will be invalid and a text prompt will appear on the parking interface.

Limitations of parking assist system

Parking assist system may not work properly in the following situations:

- The car is on a steep slope.
- One or more ultrasonic sensors are dirty or blocked.
- In extreme weather conditions when one of the ultrasonic sensors might become temporarily blocked.
- External interference from electrical equipment or devices.
- The vehicle cuts diagonally at a large angle towards the obstacle.
- There are low obstacles in the parking path.

Visual parking assist (VPA)

VPA captures vehicle surroundings through park assist cameras and displays the detected information on the centre screen display to provide a panoramic view of the vehicle to the driver.

Click the ⊞ icon on the centre screen display to select the **Parking** APP and enter the VPA interface. On the VPA interface, slide down or click on the parking app again to exit. When in R gear, you cannot manually turn off the VPA function.

⚠ Warning!

- VPA is an auxiliary function, and the driver shall constantly pay attention to vehicle surroundings.
- The distance from the person/object/obstruction to the vehicle shown on the centre screen display may be closer than the actual distance.

The normal operation of VPA depends on the surround view camera sensor. The function might have limited functionality under the following circumstances:

- The camera mounting position is changed, or the camera is blocked or stained, out of focus, faulty, etc.

- The surroundings are dim, such as at dawn, dusk, night, in tunnels, or under large shadows cast by buildings, scenery or large vehicles.
- The brightness of the surroundings suddenly changes, such as at tunnel entrances or exits.
- The sun shines obliquely or directly on the camera.
- Under bad weather such as rain, snow, fog, and haze.

ⓘ Note!

- When any parking assist camera fails, a red triangle warning symbol will appear on the VPA interface.
- The VPA will be automatically enabled when the R gear is engaged. In P gear, after a short time period VPA will automatically disable.
- The VPA can be activated as long as the vehicle speed stays below 20km/h.
- Dynamic effect of blind spot filling is observed around the model as indicated by VPA, and there is actually a 30cm blind spot. Thus, VPA cannot take place of visual inspection. You must always focus on traffic conditions and the road environment and drive the vehicle when it is safe to do so.

View switching



1. Half screen display
2. Automatic parking view
3. Before and after view switching
4. Front and rear wheel view switching

Setting VPA

After entering half screen 360, you can perform the settings interface operation.



1. Full screen display
2. Front/rear view switching
3. Obstacle trigger
4. Warning Volume
5. Trajectory lines

ⓘ Note!

When the VPA is activated by an obstacle trigger, you can slide down to deactivate the VPA, and the obstacle trigger function will be disabled. The VPA will not pop up again until the vehicle speed exceeds 20km/h.

When the smart obstacle trigger is enabled, if you encounter obstacles in a close distance, the parking camera interface will automatically pop up.

When the trajectory lines are enabled, the trajectory lines generated on the centre screen display will simulate the projection of the vehicle on the ground. Using the trajectory lines, you can view the path that the vehicle will pass through. The system will adjust the trajectory lines accordingly as the steering wheel is turned.

When obstacle marking is enabled, detected obstacles appearing in the panoramic view will be marked and a warning sound will be triggered if they get too close. You can turn off the warning sound or set the warning sound level to high, medium or low.

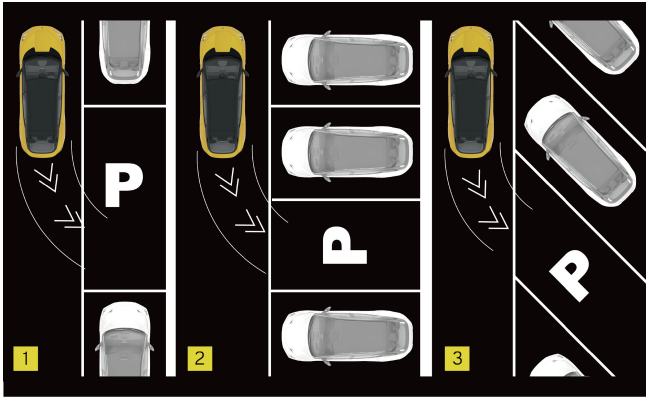
Autonomous parking assist (APA)*

The autonomous parking assist (APA) can identify the surrounding environment, automatically search for parking spaces around the vehicle, and prompt you to park when an available parking space is found. You can follow the system prompts after stopping the vehicle, so that APA can control the steering, speed and gear of the vehicle, and automatically drive the vehicle into the selected parking space.

⚠ Warning!

- Even when APA is activated, the driver shall always be responsible to intervene actively and override the vehicle as necessary.
- Do not use APA on sloped or potholed roads.
- The performance of APA depends on the capability of the environmental camera and ultrasonic sensor to detect and identify the environment. When using the environmental camera and ultrasonic sensor, check if they are damaged or in an abnormal installation position. The left and right surround view cameras are mounted on the outside door mirrors, thus you should check whether the outside door mirrors are deployed and in the correct position. In case that either of the left/right door mirrors, surround view cameras and ultrasonic sensors are damaged or in an abnormal position, do not use APA.
- Check whether there are pedestrians, children, animals, and other thin, pointed, low, suspended obstacles (e.g., ground locks, low stone piers, road cones, thin poles, sharp objects, wall corners, square columns, steps and corners of parking lot) that may affect the detection of the ultrasonic sensors around the vehicle.
- As a driving assist function, APA cannot deal with all traffic, weather, road and light conditions. You must always focus on traffic conditions and the road environment and decide whether to use this function as an intention of ensuring safety.
- If you find that it is better not to use APA under current traffic conditions or there are other unsafe factors, you shall always be prepared to take over the vehicle. Remember that you are ultimately responsible for the safe parking.

APA can support three kinds of parking spaces: parallel, vertical, and inclined.

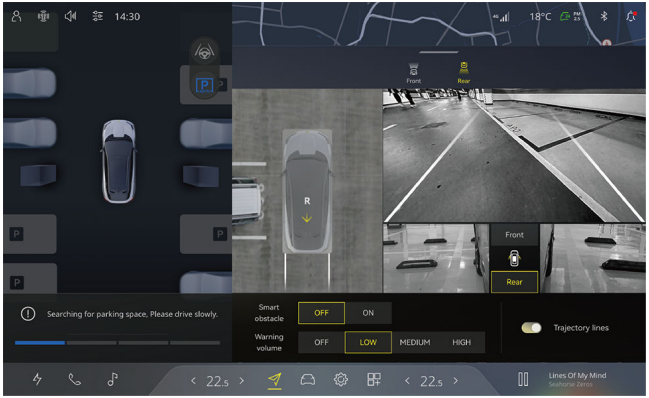


During the autonomous parking, the vehicle can be overridden by any of the following ways:

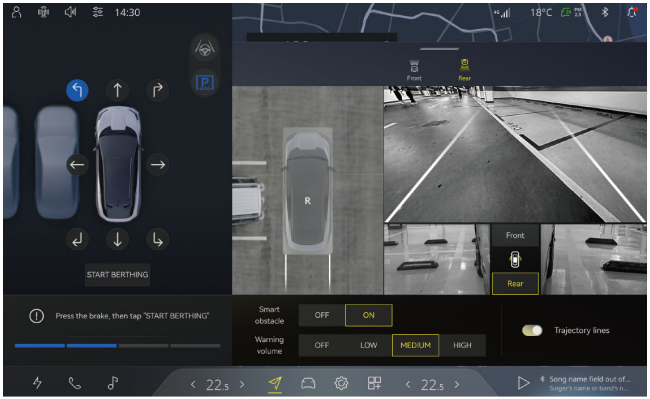
- Active shifting.
- Turning the steering wheel.

Autonomous park-in

1. Click on the icon on the centre screen display, select the **Parking** APP, click on the icon in the view interface to enter the parking space search Mode. Before beginning the parking procedure, click the icon again to exit intelligent parking.
2. Drive your car to search for an available parking space.

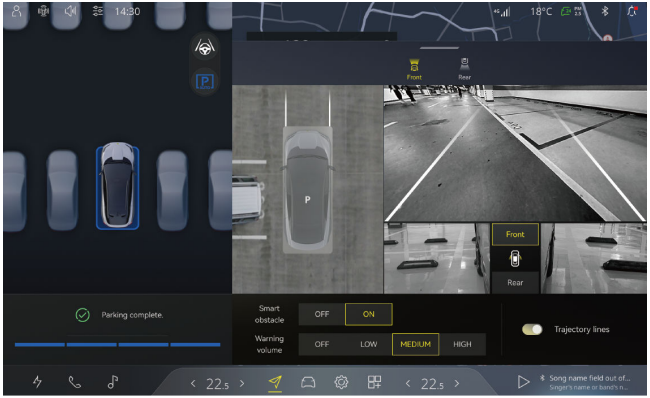


3. If an available parking space is found, depress the brake pedal to stop the car stably and click the **START BERTHING** button.



4. After releasing the brake pedal and steering wheel as prompted, the vehicle begins to intelligently drive into the parking space and displays the remaining distance of the current vehicle's parking path. During the parking process, if you press the brake pedal, the vehicle will prioritize responding to your braking command, and at the same time, corresponding messages will be shown in the centre screen display. After releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle will continue to perform intelligent parking.





5. During the parking process, if you perform operations such as unbuckling your seatbelt or opening the door, the intelligent parking system will pause and stop the vehicle, messages will be shown in the centre screen display. At this time, you can click **Exit parking** to exit autonomous parking, or you can also click **Resume parking** to continue autonomous parking after re-fastening your seatbelt or closing the door and pressing the brake pedal.
6. When the autonomous parking is completed, the centre screen display will show that the parking is completed.

⚠ Warning!

- Always observe your surroundings and follow APA's instructions.
- Before autonomous park-in, be sure to confirm the identified parking space.

ⓘ Note!

- When multiple parking spaces are found, the system will recommend the optimal parking space. If the originally recommended parking space is occupied by obstacles, the system will automatically recommend other parking spaces for you. You can also choose the parking space you need

independently. Before parking, please ensure that the parking space is not occupied by obstacles to avoid parking interruption due to obstacles during the parking process.

- In the process of parking, when there are obstacles on both sides, in order to ensure safety, the speed of the vehicle will be appropriately reduced, if one side of the obstacle (such as a square column) is too close to the parking line, the parking target parking position will be appropriately offset to avoid vehicle damage.
- APA is not effective in all situations and it is only used to provide assist in parking into parallel (Parking space without wheel stops), inclined or vertical spaces.
- After the autonomous park-in is completed, you may need to adjust the vehicle' position further to ensure proper parking.

Limitations of APA

APA will be terminated and exited forcedly when any of the following conditions occur, at this time, the driver must take over control of the vehicle:

- The parking space is too small.
- Speeding or overtime at parking.
- The camera is blocked or the sensor is disturbed.

ⓘ Note!

- If the vehicle is parked in a space close to the kerb by APA, the running path set by the APA may exceed the curb, so the driver needs to shift gears according to the actual situation to prevent the raised road shoulder from damaging the tyres or wheels.
- Using non-original tyres or incorrect inflation pressure may affect the performance of APA.

The APA may not work as expected in the following road conditions (including but not limited to):

- The road surface is uneven or has steps; In this condition, do not use APA. APA is only available on flat roads.
- If the curb cannot be detected, the tyre rim of the vehicle will be at risk of being damaged by the curb, please take over the vehicle immediately.

If the functionality of the ultrasonic sensor(s) is limited, it may cause the APA to become inoperative or not operate as expected in the following conditions (including but not limited to):

- One or more ultrasonic sensors are damaged, misaligned, or obscured (e.g., by mud, snow or ice).
- The performance of ultrasonic sensors is affected by rain, snow, fog, haze and other bad weathers.
- The sensors affected by other electrical equipment or devices that can cause interference.

The recognition capability of surround view cameras is limited and this may cause the APA to be inoperative or not to work as expected in the following conditions (including but not limited to):

- The left/right outside door mirrors of vehicle is damaged, causing the surround view camera to be positioned abnormally.
- The surround view camera is stained (e.g., by mud, snow or ice) or blocked.
- Under strong sunlight or in the shadow of mottled trees.
- The ground is reflective or has accumulated water.
- The parking space is in unconventional size (too narrow or too wide) or paved with floor tiles.
- When the contrast between the parking space line and the ground is low.

Others:

- If there is a trailer attached to the rear of the vehicle, do not use APA.
- If the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or spare wheels, do not use APA.
- If the loaded object protrudes from the vehicle, do not use APA.

Driver performance support (DPS)



Driver fatigue detection camera

DPS consists of driver fatigue warning and driver distraction warning.

The driver performance support system tracks the driver's condition using the driver monitoring system camera. If the system determines that the driver is experiencing fatigue or distracted at speeds over 10km/h, messages will appear on the driver display, and the lane keeping assist (LKA) and automatic emergency braking(AEB), if not already active, will be enabled until the driver

is alert again. A notification message is shown in the centre screen display to warn the driver and promote driving safety.

⚠ Warning!

- Driver performance support is an auxiliary system and cannot actively intervene in driving operations. You must always maintain attention and take active control of the car.
- Never drive when you feel fatigued. You must always maintain alertness while driving.
- Do not ignore the warning given by the driver performance support. After the system issues a fatigue driving warning, you should adjust driving behaviour or stop for a rest as soon as possible.

ⓘ Note!

- According to the driver's actual status, the driver performance support system activates the fatigue alarm when the driver's eyes are closed for a period of time.
- when the driver's eyes remain closed or there is excessive blinking detected for a long time period, the autonomous emergency braking and lane departure warning functions will be activated automatically until the driver looks ahead.

Setting driver performance support

Click the icon on centre screen display, and select **Safety** to switch to the setting interface, where you can click to turn **Fatigue detection/Distraction alert** on or off.

ⓘ Note!

- The driver fatigue detection is enabled by default.
- When the driver fatigue detection camera is blocked or malfunctioning, will be illuminated and the driver status cannot be monitored.
- Driver fatigue detection does not work properly if the system cannot monitor the driver's face. The driver needs to adjust the steering wheel or seat position correctly to ensure that the driver fatigue detection camera is within your direct vision and the driver fatigue detection works properly.

Limitations of driver performance support

Driver performance support may not work properly in the following situations:

- Wearing infrared impenetrable sunglasses, masks or other accessories that will cover the face.
- There is intense lighting that reduces the camera's monitoring ability.
- System misjudgement due to driver's operation.

- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).



LOTUS HYPER OS |

Notes to users

This vehicle is equipped with an infotainment head unit (IHU) with various functions that can provide you with entertainment or driving assistance.

⚠ Warning!

When operating on the centre screen display interface, be sure to stop the vehicle in a safe place, and engage into P gear, otherwise a safety accident may occur.

! Caution!

- Do not operate on the centre screen display using sharp objects, as this will cause irreparable damage to the screen.
- Do not modify or replace the IHU by yourself without permission to avoid damage to the system.
- If you notice any faults with the centre screen display, please contact your Lotus retailer.

ⓘ Note!

Due to the presence of a light sensor below the centre screen display, do not obstruct it to avoid affecting its normal use.

Introduction to centre screen display gestures



Click



Slide up



Slide down



Slide left



Slide right



Slide up and down



Zoom out with two fingers



Zoom in with two fingers



Press and hold

Restarting of centre screen display

To restart the centre screen display, you can follow the steps below:

- Turn the multi-function buttons on both sides of the steering wheel with both hands to the left and right simultaneously and hold them for a period of time to restart the centre screen display.



Restarting of centre screen display

- Unlock the vehicle after it is locked for a period of time to restart the centre screen display.

ⓘ Note!

When the centre screen display is stuck, unresponsive, disconnected or abnormal, you can restart it by the steps above.

Central screen display

Start-up guidance

When you activate the centre screen display for the first time or after a factory reset, you need to select the language, tick the appropriate boxes and then you can click **NEXT** to set it up.

After scanning the QR code in the centre screen display and successfully logging in, the system assumes that you have read and agreed to the "Lotus Head Unit Terminal User Service Agreement".

Desktop



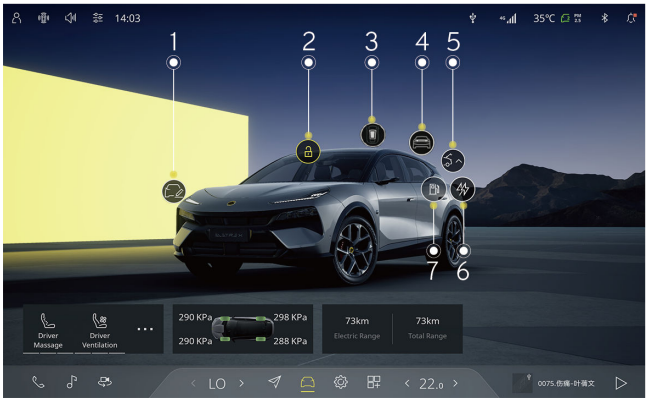
1. User centre
2. Quickly adjust the ADAS settings
3. Mute mode
4. Multifunctional panel
5. Time
6. Network
7. Temperature and air quality
8. Bluetooth
9. Notification center
10. Information cards
11. Mini player
12. Air conditioning
13. APP centre
14. Set up
15. Garage
16. Navigation
17. Quick application
18. Quick card

Shortcut panel



Swipe down on the top of the centre display to open the shortcut panel. Tap the function tab to quickly turn on/off the corresponding function or jump to the setting interface of the corresponding function.

Garage



1. Custom switch for vehicle model appearance
2. Central lock
3. Panoramic canopy adjustment switch*
4. Active rear wing switch*
5. Tailgate switch
6. Integrated charging port cover switch
7. Refueling port cover switch

Vehicle use preference function



You can adjust the position of the seat, steering wheel, outside mirrors, and the height and brightness of the head-up display (HUD) according to your daily usage habits and actual usage requirements. Click SAVE to save the current adjusted configuration information to your current preference. To save or create preferences, you can click your profile picture in the upper left corner of the centre screen display to view and manage them.

Caution!

Do not obstruct the automatic adjustment of the seat, otherwise the seat may be damaged.

Note!

During the automatic adjustment of the seat, if the seat position is manually adjusted, the automatic adjustment will be stopped.

Network settings

Wi-Fi network settings

Click the icon in the centre screen display to open the Wi-Fi setting interface. Enable the Wi-Fi network and activate the hotspot function in your phone, then you can find your phone's hotspot name in the **Networks Found** . Click connect, and the Wi-Fi network setting is completed.

Vehicle hotspot settings

Click the icon in the centre screen display to open the vehicle hotspot setting interface. Enable the vehicle hotspot and enable the Wi-Fi connection of the mobile phone or other devices, then you can find the vehicle hotspot name on the mobile phone or other devices. Tap Connect, and the vehicle hotspot setting is successful.

Network reset

When the network status is poor, you can click the icon on the centre screen display, click **NETWORK RESET** on the **System**

setting interface, and restart the vehicle system to reconnect to the network after a period of time.

Bluetooth settings

Tap the settings icon icon in the upper right corner of the centre screen display to open the Bluetooth setting interface. You can view and connect the available devices in the **Available devices** . After the connection is completed, the phone name will be displayed in the connected devices bar. You can tap to select the Bluetooth options you want to play (phone, music). You can also view and modify the vehicle name in the **Vehicle Name** , find the vehicle name in the Bluetooth search bar on your phone, and pair and connect.

⚠ Warning!

Do not operate your phone in hazardous areas such as fuel storage areas and chemical stations.

Android Auto

Android Auto can be connected by means of wireless or wired connection to enjoy smartphone features such as music, navigation, voice assistant and phone calls on the vehicle.

Wireless connection

1. Android Auto can be connected wirelessly by Bluetooth pairing the smartphone through(p.270) as a bluetooth device first.
2. After Bluetooth pairing is successful, a prompt for connecting Android Auto will pop up on the centre screen display. Click Start to complete the connection.
3. After Android Auto is connected, there will be a icon in the upper left corner of the centre screen display, and the icon in the device list will illuminate.

ⓘ Note!

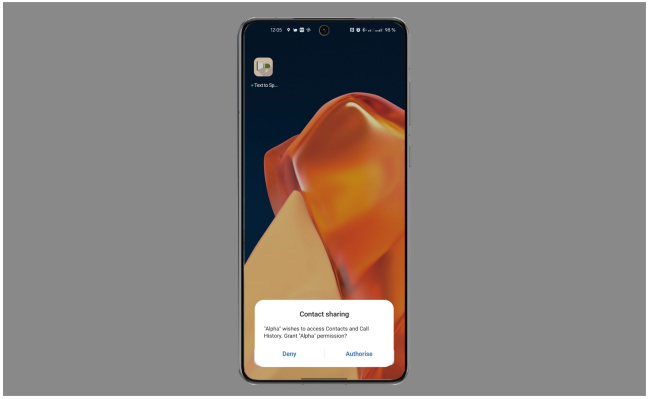
You can click the icon in the device list for quick connection after the first successful connection.

If the Android Auto connection fails, you can try the following steps to connect again:

1. Delete the phone information from the Bluetooth device list on the centre screen display.
2. Delete the vehicle information through **Setting - More Connections - Android Auto** on your Android Phone.
3. Refresh the Bluetooth device list and pair your device via Bluetooth again.

Wired connection

Connect the Android Phone to the left USB-C data transmission interface in the front armrest box using a data cable, and click Confirm on the phone to complete the connection.



Note!

The pop-up on the phone is shown to agree to sharing contacts.

Disconnection

Click the icon in the device list on the centre screen display to disconnect Android Auto.

Note!

Do not delete it on your Android Phone via **Android Auto** , otherwise Android Auto cannot be connected again.

Expanding/collapsing Android Auto

After Android Auto is connected, you can click the icon in the upper left corner of the centre screen display to expand/collapse Android Auto.

Note!

You can collapse Android Auto by sliding down. Android Auto will run full screen in a short time due to an update.

Limitations of Android Auto

Android Auto, Apple CarPlay and Bluetooth are mutually exclusive.

- Only one screen projection application is supported at one time, and Android Auto and Apple CarPlay cannot be connected at the same time.
- After Android Auto is connected, you can only connect another device's Bluetooth media.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay can be connected by means of wireless or wired connection to enjoy smartphone features such as music, navigation, Siri and phone calls on the vehicle.

Wireless connection

1. Apple CarPlay can be connected wirelessly by Bluetooth pairing of the smartphone(p.270).
2. After Bluetooth pairing is successful, a prompt for connecting Apple CarPlay will pop up on the centre screen display. Click connect Apple CarPlay, and click **AGREE** on the smartphone to complete the connection.
3. After Apple CarPlay is connected, there will be a icon in the upper left corner of the centre screen display, and the icon in the device list will illuminate.

Note!

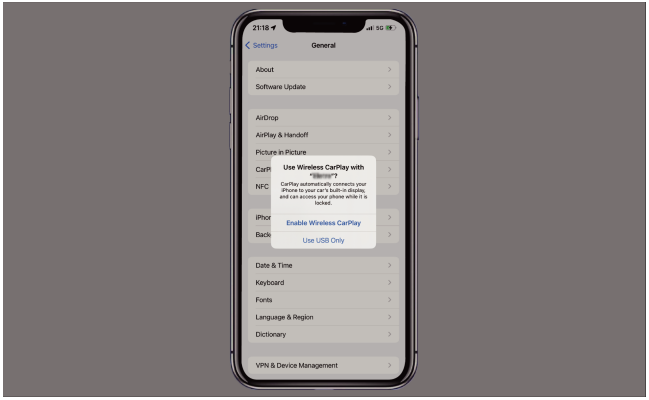
You can click the icon in the device list for quick connection after the first successful connection.

If the Apple CarPlay connection fails, you can try the following steps to connect again:

1. Delete the phone information from the Bluetooth device list on the centre screen display.
2. Delete the vehicle information through **Setting - General - CarPlay** on your iPhone.
3. Refresh the Bluetooth device list and pair your device using Bluetooth again.

Wired connection

Connect the iPhone to the left USB-C data transmission interface in the front armrest box using a data cable, and click **Confirm** on the phone to complete the connection.



Description of Apple CarPlay function

After Apple CarPlay is connected, you can activate Siri by saying "Hey Siri" or by holding the menu/voice button on the right side of the steering wheel.

ⓘ Note!

Siri can only be used by the driver.

Disconnection

You can click the icon in the upper right corner of the central display screen, then click the icon in the device list to disconnect Apple CarPlay.

ⓘ Note!

Do not delete it on your iPhone via **CarPlay** , otherwise Apple CarPlay cannot be connected again.

Expanding/collapsing Apple CarPlay

After Apple CarPlay is connected, you can expand/collapse Apple CarPlay in the following ways:

- Click the icon in the upper left corner of the centre screen display to expand/collapse Apple CarPlay.
- Click the icon on the centre screen display, and select **Apple CarPlay** to turn it on.

ⓘ Note!

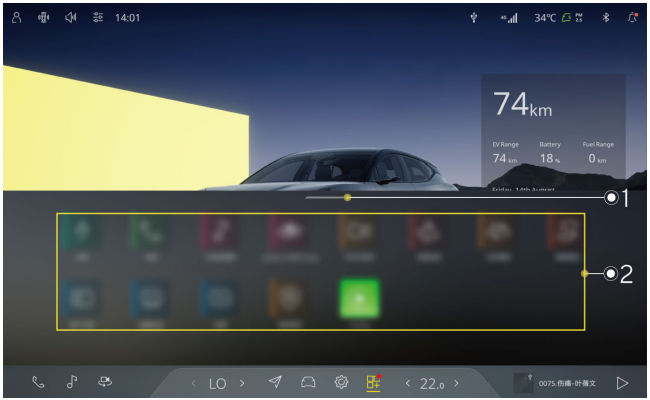
You cannot collapse the Apple CarPlay by sliding down.

Limitations of Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay, Android Auto and Bluetooth are mutually exclusive:

- Only one screen projection application is supported at one time, and Android Auto and Apple CarPlay cannot be connected at the same time.
- After Apple CarPlay is connected, you can only connect another device's Bluetooth media.

System application



1. Deactivation area: click or swipe down on the area to close the application management interface.
2. Application: press and hold the application icon and drag to sort. If there is a new version of the application, tap the update button on the icon to update the application.

Click the icon on the centre screen display to open the application management interface. Tap the application icon on the application management interface to open the corresponding application.

Note!

If no action is taken on the centre screen display for a period of time, the system application interface will be deactivated automatically.

Multimedia

You can open the multimedia interface from the application center.



1. Radio
2. USB-C playback
3. Bluetooth playback
4. Online multimedia
5. Sound settings

Radio

Tap the icon on the radio interface to search and automatically play the radio station found. Tap the radio channel or play icon to turn on or off playback.

You can tap the icon corresponding to the radio channel to add it as a favourite channel, and that channel will be saved in the favourites list.

In areas with DAB channel coverage, you can select FM or DAB radio stations by sliding up or down in the **STATION LIST** .

Bluetooth playback

After your mobile phone is connected to the vehicle using Bluetooth, you can open the Bluetooth playback interface to play the songs in your mobile phone.

USB-C playback

When an USB-C drive or device is connected to the vehicle USB-C interface, the songs in the USB-C drive or device can be played by opening the USB-C playback interface.

Sound

Equalizer tuning

You can click on the icon through centre screen display, select **Sound** . In clear original sound mode, you can turn on or off the sound customisation function. After turning on the equalizer sound effect, you can click **EQUALIZER** to enter the equalizer tuning interface.

In this interface, the bass, midrange and treble frequency bands can be adjusted according to personal preferences, and each frequency band has three stages of positive and negative to choose from. In the bass section, the variation amplitude of each stage is 2 dB; The midrange and treble segments vary by 1 dB per order.

The vehicle's centre and rear screen can be adjusted synchronously, and the adjusted scheme will be memorized.

Equalizer tuning is not possible in **STAGE** mode and **SPATIAL** mode.

Decrease media volume while doors open

You can click the icon on the central screen display, select **Sound** , and in this interface, click to turn on or off the **Decrease media volume while doors open** function.

This function prevents the media volume from being too loud and disturbing pedestrians around when a door is opened.

When multimedia is playing, if any vehicle door is opened, the system will lower the media volume. When all doors are closed, the media volume will resume. During the period when the system lowers the media volume, if you manually adjust the media volume, the system will prioritize the volume you adjusted.

Voice

The car is equipped with Lotus personal assistant, by which you can control the activation and deactivation of some functions of vehicle.

To wake up the voice function, you can say the wake-up words ("Hi, Lotus" or "Hello, Lotus" by default) or press the voice button on the right side of the steering wheel. When the voice function responds to your wake-up, a voice broadcast bubble will appear in the centre screen display.

Here are some of the voice demonstrations:

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example
Basic function	Smart voice wake-up	Hi, Lotus Hello Lotus
Navigation	Initiate navigation	Start navigation
	Inquire about your location	Where am i ?
	Navigate to a point of interest	Drive/Navigate to [location]
	Cancel navigation	Cancel navigation Close the navigation app
	Display nearby charging stations	Show nearby charging station
	Go to frequently visited places	Drive home/to office
	During navigation, view entire route	During navigation, view entire route
	Returns a list of relevant addresses, prompting user to pick from list	Returns a list of relevant addresses, prompting user to pick from list
Climate controls	Turn on/off front A/C	Turn on/off A/C
	Adjust the temperature	Increase/Decrease temperature

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example
		Set the temperatur to 26℃
	Turn on/off rear A/C	Turn on/off rear A/C
	Adjust the air volume	Increase/Decrease fan speed
		Set the tempo/fan speed to 5th gear
	Turn on/off seat heating	Turn on/off seat heating
	Turn on/off seat ventilation	Turn on/off seat ventilation
	Turn on/off steering wheel heating	Turn on/off steering wheel heating
Phone	Call a contact	Call [contact name/ phone number]
	View contact list	Open contact list
	View recent calls list	Open recent calls list
	text	Send a messsage to [contact name/phone number]

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example
	Turn on the Bluetooth phone	Turn on the Bluetooth phone Turn on the phone
	Will show missed calls	Will show missed calls
	Will redial last call	Will redial last call
Media	Play/pause radio	Play/pause radio
	Play the designated radio station	Play [radio station name]
	Play/pause music	Play/pause music
	Switch music	Previous/next song
	Switch music source	Play bluetooth-/ USB-/online music
	Scan for radio stations	Scan for radio stations
System settings	Adjust the volume	Increase/decrease volume
		Set the volume to 20
	Mute/unmute	Mute/unmute

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example
	Turn on/off head-up display	Turn on/off HUD
	Adjust the brightness of the central control screen	Increase/decrease brightness
	Trun on WiFi/ bluetooth	Trun on WiFi/ bluetooth
	Adjust navigation volume	Increase/decrease navigation volume
	Adjust the voice assistant volume	Increase/decrease voice assistant volume
	Mute/unmute voice guidance	Mute/unmute voice guidance
	Inquire about the time at a certain location	What time is it in [location]
	Inquire about the day of the week at a certain location	What day is it today in [location]?
	Inquire about the weather at a certain location	How is the weather in [location]?
Vehicle controls	Open/close all windows	Open/close all windows
	Open front left/right window	Open front left/right window
	Open/close trunk	Open/close trunk
	Turn on/off the ambient lighting	Turn on/off the ambient lighting
	Inquire about remaining range	How far can i drive ?

⚠ Warning!

When controlling the vehicle by voice, it is important to pay attention to the surrounding environment and the occupants inside the vehicle to avoid accidental injuries.

ⓘ Note!

- When using the Lotus personal assistant, please pronounce it correctly to avoid the system being unable to recognize or recognizing it incorrectly.

- In order to continuously improve quality, Lotus collects and processes voice command transcription text. However, in order to further protect your privacy, these transcribed contents will not be associated with your Lotus account or vehicle identification code.

Phone

Click icon in **Application program** interface to enable phone bluetooth interface.

Once the phone is connected to the vehicle using bluetooth, your phone can be used hands-free using Bluetooth.

When you make a call, the information and operation of the call are displayed on the left side of centre screen display.

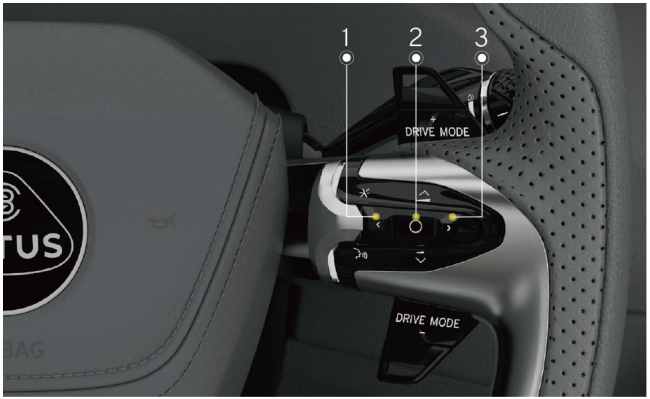
⚠ Warning!

- Do not use mobile phones in areas of high explosion risk. Otherwise, sparks may generate, which could cause a fire or explosion.
- Be sure to operate this function when road conditions permit or the vehicle is stationary.

Answer/end/reject bluetooth calls using steering wheel buttons

When you receive a call reminder on the centre screen display, you can use the multifunction buttons on the right side of the steering wheel to answer/end/reject bluetooth calls.

- When you need to answer a bluetooth phone call, you can press the middle button of the multifunction button on the right side of the steering wheel to answer the bluetooth phone call.
- When you need to hang up a bluetooth phone, you can press the middle button of the multifunction button on the right side of the steering wheel twice continuously to hang up the bluetooth phone.
- When you want to reject a bluetooth phone call, first press the right button of the multifunction button on the right side of the steering wheel, and then press the middle button to reject the bluetooth phone call.



1. Right multifunction button left button
2. Right multifunction button middle key
3. Right multifunction button right button

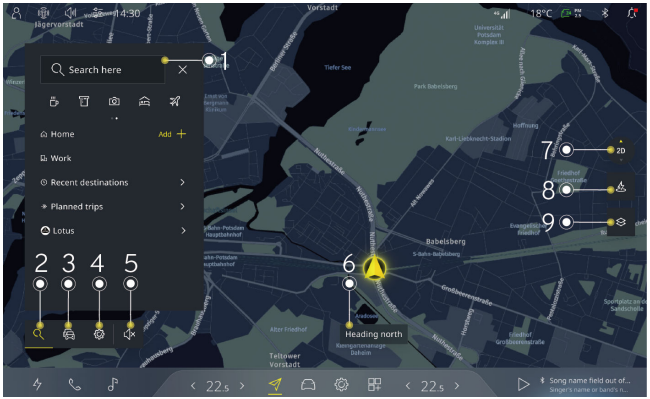
Navigation

This vehicle is equipped with HERE maps, which can provide a navigation service for your travel.

ⓘ Note!

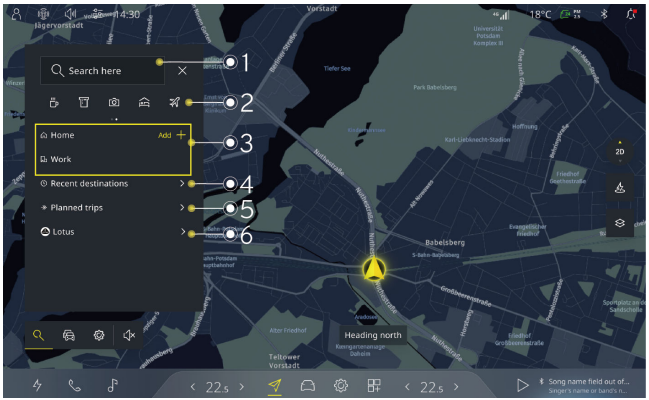
This function can only be used when the network is connected.

Overview of navigation interface



1. Springboard: you can set or search for different destinations on springboard.
2. Search icon: open the springboard.
3. Traffic information.
4. Navigation settings.
5. Voice prompt mute/unmute.
6. Re-center: tap to return to the current position.
7. View switch: switch between 3D view, 2D view, and 2D north up view.
8. Click to see range on map.
9. Switch between standard map and satellite map.

Route planning



The springboard gives different possibilities to set or search for a destination.

1. The search bar allows you to enter keywords.
2. Point of Interests: a quick search for different categories nearby.
3. It is possible to set your home, work to quickly navigate to these destinations.
4. Recent destinations: shows the last destinations you have navigated to.
5. Planned trips: allows you to plan a route and save it.
6. Lotus: shows you any Lotus retailers nearby or service station.

While planning a route, the navigation system will provide information about the estimated time of arrival, total distance and the remaining range after reaching the destination. You may also have the possibility to choose alternative routes.

The route planning function calculates the vehicle's trip consumption using a specific consumption model. The system automatically plans the charging stations and refueling stations required to reach the destination based on the user-defined minimum range expectation at waypoints and the destination. If the energy consumption pattern changes, or the nearest set charging station and refueling station or the destination cannot be reached with the remaining energy range, additional charging stations and refueling stations are automatically added by the application.

You can click on **Settings** - **Route planning** - **Automatic charging** in the navigation interface and choose to turn this function on/off.

Range on route visualizes the remaining vehicle range on its active route.

Range on map visualizes the remaining range on the map, implemented as a map view mode.

The route planning algorithm takes the in-APP preferences set by the user and central parameters set by Lotus into consideration. Route planning updates the range on the map every time the user opens the view. Range on route is updated automatically when conditions change and on regular intervals.

This feature can be turned on by tapping the range icon on the map.

Navigation mode

During the navigation process, information such as turning information, estimated arrival time, remaining time, remaining distance, and traffic conditions will be displayed.

Pinch to zoom, swipe with two fingers up and down to tilt the map angle.

If desired, the intersection view can also be displayed.

You can click on **Settings** - **Wizard** - **Intersection view** in the navigation interface and choose to turn this function on/off.

When you arrive at your destination, the navigation system will provide you with the option to search for nearby parking spaces.

Navigation settings

Tap the "Settings" icon to enter the map settings interface.

- Modify the priority prompt for "Route", such as real-time traffic information.
- Adjust charging priorities, such as defining priority charging speeds or suppliers when searching for charging stations.
- Turn on the "Intersection view".
- Download maps for offline use.

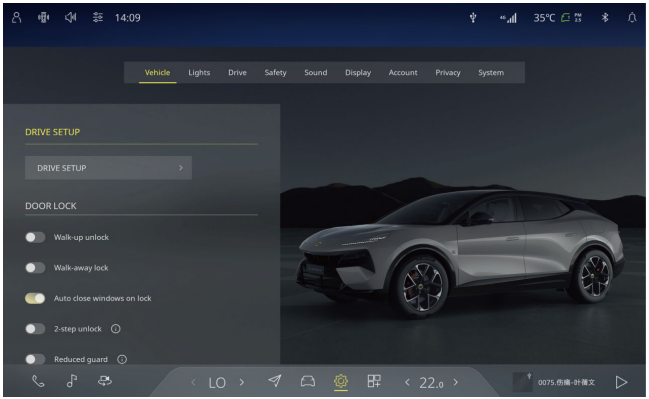
Offline map: the map data will be automatically updated when the network is connected.

ⓘ Note!

You may only use offline maps when offline and if you have downloaded the map data while connected to a network.

Set up

Vehicle



This screen allows you to set door lock, sunroof transparency, drive control, and other functions.

Lights

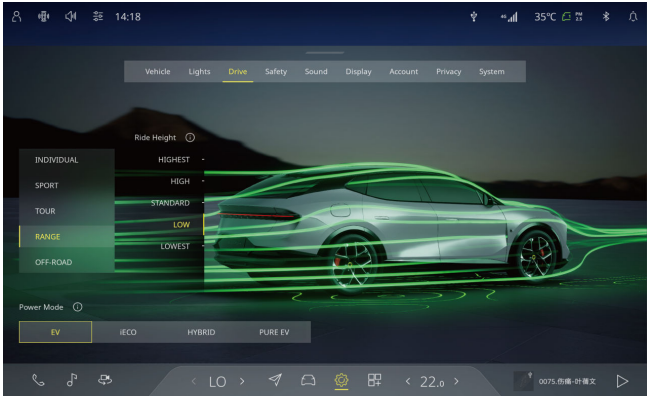


This interface allows you to set up external and internal lighting.

Internal light: the on/off, colour and brightness of the ambinet lamps can be adjusted.

External light: adaptive light switch, tourist mode.

Drive mode



In this interface, you can set the drive mode, and in some driving modes, you can set the body height. The driving mode includes individual mode, sport mode, tour mode, range mode, off-road mode and driving mode.

Safety



In this interface, the drive assist, active safety and passenger safety can be set.

Click on the icon in the upper left corner of the centre screen display to quickly open the **Safety** interface.

Sound



In this interface, you can set the sound, sound optimization, volume and other functions.

You can also adjust the volume in the following ways:

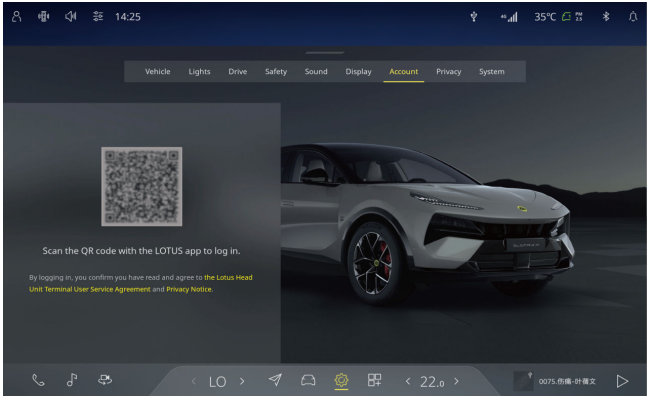
- Click the multifunction panel on the centre screen display, and click or drag the slider to adjust the volume of multimedia, navigation, phone, and voice.
- Click the volume settings on the rear display screen, and click or drag the slider to adjust the volume.
- Turn down the menu/voice button on the right side of the steering wheel or activate the voice function to adjust the volume. The range of voice adjustment is 1 to 27.

Display



This interface can be set for the central display, passenger display, rear display, etc.

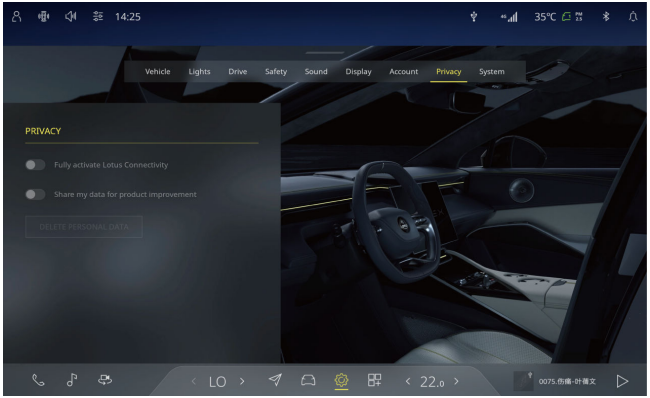
Account



Scan the QR code to log in to your account. After entering the user interface, you can switch or log out the account, view user agreements, and set up simultaneous login and exit for some third-party accounts.

You can also tap the profile photo in the upper left corner of the centre screen display to quickly enter and set up the services you need.

Privacy



This interface allows you to perform privacy settings, view the Lotus privacy policy.

ⓘ Note!

When the relevant privacy functions are not enabled, some functions of the vehicle cannot be used properly.

System



In this interface, you can set language, notification, date and time, unit, and other content.

OTA system upgrade operation

When a Wi-Fi prompt appears on the centre screen display, you need to connect to a secure Wi-Fi connection or mobile hotspot. If the vehicle is already connected to Wi-Fi, you will not see this prompt.

This vehicle is equipped with Over-The-Air (OTA) upgrade functionality, the download happens automatically in the background when the car is connected to Wi-Fi or a mobile hotspot, and when the car is active.

You can open the OTA system upgrade interface by clicking  icon at the top of the central display or clicking  icon and selecting **System** - **Check for update** from the setting interface. The update information field will show the purpose, items, the estimated time required for the upgrade, the impact of the upgrade on the vehicle functions and any notes related to the upgrade.

After entering the OTA upgrade interface, you need to read and agree to the **Software Remote Update Service Terms** . After you agree, you can select **SCHEDULE** or **UPDATE NOW** .

ⓘ Note!

You can open **Night-Time AutoUpdate** , and the subsequent OTA push will automatically schedule the installation and upgrade from 03:00 to 04:00 at night after the download is completed.

After selecting Update Now, the countdown prompt box will be displayed on the centre screen display. You can wait for the countdown to end and start the automatic upgrade; You can also choose to upgrade immediately to skip the countdown, or choose not to upgrade temporarily.

You can also schedule an OTA system upgrade at any time within 24 hours. Once set, the scheduled upgrade icon will be displayed at the upper right of the interface. The system will automatically start the OTA upgrade at the scheduled time when the network is connected.

Before the upgrade is officially started, the system will test the upgrade prerequisites. If the test fails, the failed items need to be confirmed one by one. After the upgrade conditions are confirmed to be met, you can tap **RETRY** to try upgrading again.

After the official start of the upgrade, the system upgrade process will continue for a period of time depending on the version. After the upgrade is completed, the system will restart accompanied with a brief black screen.

After the upgrade is completed, the system will enter the preparation process, which is expected to take 1-2 minutes.

⚠ Warning!

Be sure to operate this function after your vehicle has been parked in a safe area and in P gear, otherwise it may cause upgrade failure, or even personal injury or death.

ⓘ Note!

If the OTA system upgrade fails, the Lotus Customer Care Centre should be contacted immediately.

Upgrade precautions

Please ensure that the vehicle meets all of the following conditions before conducting an OTA upgrade:

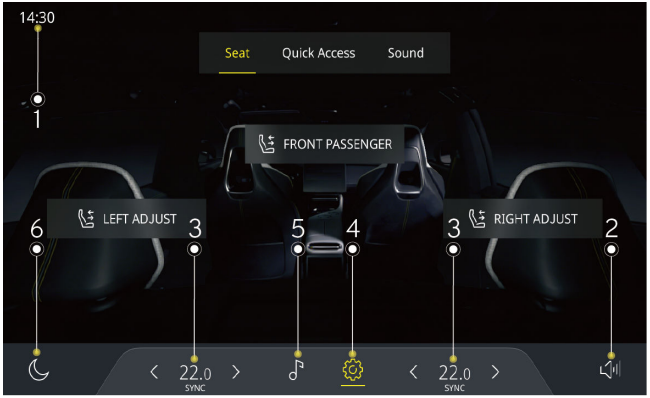
- The vehicle is parked in a safe area and engaged in P gear.

- The network connection to vehicle is normal.
- The high voltage battery of the vehicle is greater than 20% SOC.
- The vehicle is not in state of charge.

Caution!

The use of non-genuine parts, or any actions such as ECU reflashing, vehicle disassembly, may cause OTA updates to malfunction. Such circumstances are not covered under warranty.

Rear display



1. Time
2. Volume settings
3. Air conditioning
4. Set up
5. Multimedia
6. Screen off

Warning!

The rear display is provided with anti-pinch function when folded. However, to ensure safety, do not place your hands or other objects under the rear display to avoid pinching your hands or causing damage to the rear display.

Caution!

You can click on the icon in the rear display screen to control the lifting or retraction of the rear display screen. Do not use excessive pressure to prevent damage to the rear display screen.

Note!

After the vehicle is locked, the rear display screen will automatically fold up. Some models do not support the rear display function of raising or retracting.

Rear display lock

When you want to prevent rear passengers from operating the rear display, you can tap the icon on the centre screen display, select **Display** and the tap **Rear display lock** to turn on or off the rear display locking function.

After you turn on the **Rear display lock** function, tapping the rear display will briefly light up the screen, where the method of reopening the rear display will appear. If you do not operate for a period of time, the rear display be will automatically locked.



MAINTENANCE |

Necessity of maintenance

Please follow the routine maintenance schedule in this manual to ensure the satisfactory use of the vehicle and a good ride experience, and to reduce the possible maintenance costs incurred.

The routine maintenance in this manual requires the joint participation of you (the user) and the Lotus retailer, and shall be carried out according to the relevant instructions specified in this manual.

Considering the complexity of the vehicle system, we strongly recommend that you only use your Lotus retailer for maintenance and repair. This is to ensure your safety.

If you have any questions about this, please contact your Lotus retailer for more information.

Daily maintenance

Daily checks of specific items or functions are benefiicial to keeping your car in good condition, ensure its normal use, driving safety and reduce vehicle failures. You should refer to the relevant instructions in this manual to complete the daily checks before driving. If any issues or problems are found whilst performing these checks then please contact your Lotus retailer as soon as possible. The daily items to be checked are mainly including the following:

- Check the power of the high voltage battery.
- Check all exterior lights, horns, direction indicator lamps, hazard warning lamps for proper operation. Check if any indicator or warning lamps on the driver display come on abnormally.
- Check seat belts and parking brake for proper operation.
- Check the door windows for proper operation.
- Check the wipers and windscreen washer for normal operation, check the wiper washer fluid level, and add if necessary.
- Check if the pressure of each tyre is normal. Check if there is any damage to the tyres (such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and bulges). Check if there is abnormal wear on the tread and remove foreign objects from the tread. Check the tyre for wear (whether it has reached the wear mark position).
- Check if the road wheels any corrosion, deformation, or cracking caused by impact, collision, or contamination with corrosive liquids. If you are unable to determine whether there is an abnormality on your own, please contact your Lotus retailer as soon as possible.
- Check the levels of engine oil, coolant, and brake fluid. If any is low, you can add it yourself. At the same time, check the quality of the fluids. If there are too many impurities, replace them promptly.
- When driving in low temperature or icy/snowy environments, in order to avoid corrosion or damage to the wheels and brake calipers by deicing agents, such as salt, it is recommended to

check the surface of the wheels and brake calipers for ice and snow accumulation and remove them immediately.

Scheduled maintenance

To maintain warranty validation and help ensure proper safety, performance and dependability of the vehicle, Lotus Cars requires that the vehicle be serviced in accordance with latest version of the maintenance schedule.

See the table below for specific information relating to items replaced, fluids changed, and other operations carried out during servicing; for further information please contact any authorised Lotus retailer.

Inspection items	Project	Type of maintenance
Standard procedures for scheduled inspection	12 months or 20,000 km	I
Air filter	12 months or 20,000 km	R
Engine oil	12 months or 20,000 km	R
Engine oil filter	12 months or 20,000 km	R
Engine coolant	60 months or 100,000 km	R
Spark plugs	40,000 km	R
Pollen filter	12 months or 20,000 km	R
Brake fluid	24 months	R
Coolant	60 months or 100,000 km	R
Transmission fluid	48 months or 80,000 km	R
I: check; correct, clean, add, adjust, transpose, lubricate or replace as necessary R: replace		

Note: the above deadlines are whichever comes first.

Additional maintenance items or shorter service intervals may be required if the vehicle is regularly driven in the following harsh conditions.

- Often in highly dusty conditions.
- Often in severe cold (below 0°C) or high (above 40°C) temperatures.

- Often in wet conditions or frequently driving in water.
- Often on roads with salty or corrosive materials.
- Frequent braking or driving in hilly areas.
- Used for operational activities or for special purposes such as frequent use under high loads.
- Used for racing or competitive activities.

Precautions for maintenance

If the vehicle is left unused for a long time, it is recommended that you go to your Lotus retailer for a comprehensive inspection and maintenance.

Warranty coverage

This manual applies to the model purchased and used by users in any country in Europe where a Lotus retailer is present. If the vehicles specified in this manual are subject to failures or defects that occur within the warranty period for any reasons other than misuse, damage, neglect, natural weather conditions/ disasters and other external influences, Lotus will use original parts (including Lotus approved parts) and provide repair services in a reasonable and effective manner that complies with Lotus maintenance standards, and be responsible for all related costs.

Warranty period

For details of warranty period of the vehicle, please refer to the following table:

Vehicle warranty		
Classify	**Content**	**Limited warranty period**
High Voltage Components	HV battery, electric drive systems (drive motors, drive motor controller assemblies, drive motor reducers)	96 months or 200,000 km
Basic warranty	The whole vehicle(except for the components listed below)	60 months or 150,000 km
Consumable parts	12V battery	Unlimited mileage for 24 months
	Engine oil filter	12 months or 16,000 km
	Air filter	12 months or 16,000 km

Vehicle warranty		
Classify	**Content**	**Limited warranty period**
	Pollen filter	12 months or 16,000 km
	Brake pads	12 months or 16,000 km
	Wiper blades	12 months or 16,000 km
	Fuses and general purpose relays (excluding ECU)	12 months or 16,000 km
	Key fob battery	6 months or 10,000 km
	Tyre (tyre warranty is covered by the tyre manufacturer)	
Vehicle body corrosion (through holes in the vehicle body panel from the inside out)		Unlimited mileage for 12 years
Paint warranty		Unlimited mileage for 5 years

Note: the above deadlines are whichever comes first.

The warranty does not cover the following:

- In situations where the actual mileage of the vehicle cannot be determined because the odometer in the vehicle has been modified without authorization.
- Battery damage as a result of storage, improper use of the vehicle, or the installation of electrical accessories not authorized by Lotus.
- Any damage to the hardware or software of the vehicle due to unauthorised access to vehicle data or software from any source; any loss or damage to personal information/data uploaded to the vehicle; viruses, bugs, malware or any other form of interference or cyber-attack.
- Vehicle damage due to fatigue driving or overload.
- Vehicle damage caused by the use of the vehicle as a power source.
- Normal wear, tear and deterioration (e.g., discolouration, fading, deformation, blurring, etc.) of components which are not deemed as defects of manufacturing or materials.
- Tyre damage due to driving on dangerous roads.

ⓘ Note!

- For accessories or high-quality parts with a separately agreed warranty, the agreed warranty period shall prevail.
- If the high voltage battery needs to be maintained due to a problem, the Lotus retailer will evaluate and determine the

maintenance method (repair, replace or provide refurbished parts).

- The power consumption of the key fob battery varies according to the usage scenario. If the key is kept near the vehicle, it will be in the high power consumption state for a long time. Try to avoid placing the key near the vehicle for a long time. If the power level of the key fob is low, there will be a prompt in the driver display to remind you to replace the battery in time.

Description of warranty period

Within the warranty period, if the parts are subject to quality problems under the normal use of the vehicle due to defects in the design, manufacture or raw materials, Lotus will provide warranty service for the aforementioned parts. These repairs will be free of charge for the customer if they are carried out by the Lotus retailer.

Service record

First maintenance (1 years or 20,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	

First maintenance (1 years or 20,000km)	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Second maintenance (2 years or 40,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Third maintenance (3 years or 60,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Fourth maintenance (4 years or 80,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	

Fourth maintenance (4 years or 80,000km)	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Fifth maintenance (5 years or 100,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Sixth maintenance (6 years or 120,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	

Sixth maintenance (6 years or 120,000km)	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Seventh maintenance (7 years or 140,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Eighth maintenance (8 years or 160,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Ninth maintenance (9 years or 180,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	

Ninth maintenance (9 years or 180,000km)	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Tenth maintenance(10 years or 200,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Note: the above deadlines are whichever comes first.

Change of ownership

The limited warranty of the vehicle provided in this manual is not subject to the transfer of vehicle ownership, but the remaining limited warranty period of the vehicle shall still be calculated from the date of the purchase invoice (the date of first invoicing) held by the first owner of the vehicle.

Record of ownership change

Change log			
Address of current user		Address of original user	
ID number		ID number	
Postal code		Postal code	
Phone of current user		Phone of original user	
Email		Email	
Mobile phone number		Mobile phone number	

Change log			
VIN		Drive motor number	
Model		Date of registration	
Mileage at the time of ownership change		Date of change	
Registration plate number			
Stamp			

Storage and maintenance

In order to maintain the good performance of the vehicle, please avoid exposing the vehicle to either excessively high or low temperature environments for excessive time periods. When the ambient temperature of the vehicle storage is too low, the distance to empty will be reduced and the charging time will increase.

It is better to avoid the SOC of high voltage battery to drop below 20%. If a low battery reminder appears, please charge the battery as soon as possible. Depletion of high voltage battery will lead to a decrease in its performance.

When the vehicle needs to be parked for an extended period, do not allow the high voltage battery to run out of charge. Even when the vehicle is not in motion, the high voltage battery will continue to discharge slowly to power the on-board electronic devices. In this case, please ensure that the high voltage battery state of charge remains within a relatively sufficient range. Please perform high voltage battery maintenance at least once every 3 months by fully charging the battery through slow charging, then discharging it to 50%~70% before parking the vehicle.

Before long-term parking, it is recommended to keep the fuel tank at 25%~50% full. If the fuel level is too high, fuel expansion and overflow may occur due to temperature changes.

During long-term parking, it is necessary to regularly check the quality of the oil. When the engine operating frequency is low, the engine oil is prone to emulsification and deterioration. It is recommended to start the engine at least once a week and let it idle for 5~10 minutes.

If you are intended to start a vehicle that has been parked for more than 3 months, ensure to check whether any warning light or warning message related to the high voltage battery appears on the drive display before doing so. In case of any questions, please contact your Lotus dealer.

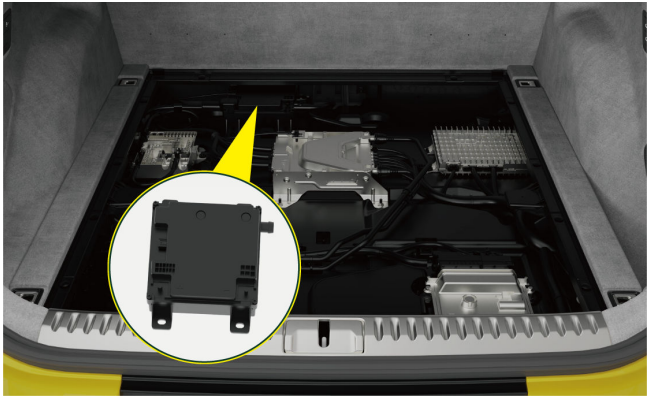
⚠ Warning!

If improper long-term storage of the vehicle results in damage to the high voltage battery, Lotus Cars reserves the right to refuse warranty service for the high voltage battery.

ⓘ Note!

- When the vehicle is parked for a long time, be sure to check and maintain it regularly.
- For safety reasons, the available power of high-voltage batteries that are beyond their designed service life will be gradually limited.

Battery



Battery

The battery is located under the boot of the vehicle.

The service life and function of the battery are affected by many factors, such as the times of starts, driving style, driving conditions, climatic conditions, etc:

- If the battery has been completely discharged multiple times, its service life may be shortened. Keeping the battery charged helps extend its lifespan.

- The starting capacity of the battery will be weakened over time. If the vehicle is parked for a long time, the battery may need to be recharged.

⚠ Warning!

- Battery electrolyte is corrosive, and if it gets into the eyes or skin, rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical care.
- The maintenance and care of the battery should be handled by professionally trained personnel.
- It is prohibited to touch the positive and negative terminals of the battery with both hands simultaneously or to touch the positive and negative terminals with a conductor at any time.
- If you notice a battery fire, be sure to leave the vehicle quickly. In case that thick smoke is inhaled, move away from the vehicle and seek medical attention as soon as possible.

! Caution!

Never use a lead-acid battery charger to charge the battery.

If you notice the following, be sure to stop using the vehicle and cut off the power immediately. You can also contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre for further guidance:

- Power cords, plugs, or communication lines are cracked or damaged;
- Signs of overheating, fumes, and sparks;
- Battery pack damage (e.g., cracking), battery leakage.

Safety warnings for battery handing



The battery voltage is dangerous.



It is forbidden to connect positive and negative terminals.



The battery contains a highly corrosive toxic acid.



The battery may release flammable gases, so open flames or other sources of ignition are prohibited near the battery.



The battery shall be kept out of reach of children.



When any operator is working near or handling batteries, always wear appropriate eye protection appliances to prevent splashing battery electrolyte from getting into the eyes.



The battery must not be discarded irresponsibly as this is harmful to the environment, so it must be recycled in an environmentally friendly and safe way.



Recycle the battery in the right way.

Tyre information

Tyre wear

To reduce tyre wear and extend tyre life, please have your tyres checked and replaced according to your driving habits and road conditions:

- For new tyres, the first 500 km of driving is the running-in period, during which the tyres should be run-in by careful driving at a proper speed, so as to prolong the service life of the tyres.
- Fast driving in corners, too fast acceleration and emergency braking will all increase tyre wear.
- Avoid sudden acceleration or emergency braking.
- When driving over curbs, potholes, gravel roads, or similar roads, please drive as slowly as possible. If you cannot avoid driving over such conditions, please maintain a low speed and do not directly press over the curbs.

Tyre economy:

- Maintain the correct tyre pressure.
- Avoid sudden braking as much as possible.
- Tyre wear accelerates with increased speed.
- Maintain proper wheel alignment.
- Avoid tyre damage caused by corrosive liquid contaminating the tyres.
- Wheel imbalance can lead to poor tyre economy and ride comfort.
- Tyres must rotate in the same direction throughout their entire service life.

The damage to tyres and rims is not easily noticeable. If the vehicle experiences issues during running (such as tyre pressure warning, vibration, deviation, etc.), please immediately slow down and park the vehicle in a safe place to check to see if the tyres/rims are damaged. If the damage cannot be identified from the appearance, please contact or request assistance from your Lotus retailer.

⚠ Warning!

- If the tyre wear is uneven, it is recommended that you go to your Lotus retailer for four-wheel alignment and dynamic balance detection.
- If damage is found to the tyre, even if it is not deflated, it should be stopped from use immediately and replaced. When the wheel rim is deformed, cracked, or severely corroded, it should also be stopped from use immediately and replaced. Be sure to keep the tyres/rims in a safe state when driving the vehicle.
- If tyres other than those specified are used, ensure that the load and speed ratings marked on the tyre. Please refer to **Tyre introduction** (p.18).

Seasonal tyres

In low temperature environment below 7 ℃, the performance of summer tyres will decrease. In this case, Lotus recommends replacing the vehicle's tyres with winter tyres.

Winter tyres can improve the traction in icy conditions. Be sure to install the correct winter tyres. If you have any questions, please contact Lotus Customer Care Centre for relevant advice on winter tyres.

When driving a vehicle with winter tyres fitted, you may experience increased tyre noise, reduced tread life and reduced traction on dry roads.

⚠ Warning!

Summer tyres cannot provide sufficient traction in cold or icy conditions, and they are prone to cracking and damage at extremely low temperatures. Choosing and fitting proper tyres for vehicle operation in winter is also critical to ensuring the safety and optimum performance of your car.

! Caution!

- The use of winter tyres should conform to local regulations.
- If the tread depth of a winter tyre is less than 4mm, it must be replaced.
- If the tread depth of a summer tyre is less than 1.6mm, it must be replaced to advid accidents.

Tyre chains

Be sure to install chains on vehicle tyres before travelling on snow or icy roads in winter. The snow chains can increase the friction with the road, thereby reducing the risk of side-slip.

For installation of the snow chains, please refer to the snow chains manufacturer's instructions for use. When using snow chains, pay attention to the following:

- The use of snow chains should conform to local regulations.
- When driving with snow chains, the vehicle speed must not exceed 50 km/h.
- The chains can be installed on driving wheels. Use the corresponding snow chains according to the recommended specifications.
- Snow chains may not be available for some sized wheels. Please contact Lotus Customer Care Centre for specific information.
- When driving a vehicle with snow chains, you may feel that the maneuverability is affected.
- When driving a vehicle with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or locked wheels.
- When driving to snow-free sections, remove the snow chains to avoid damage to the tyres or excessive wear of the snow chains.

Caution!

- After the snow chains are installed, the air suspension adjustment of the body height is not allowed to be lower than the **STANDARD** .
- Do not install snow chains on summer tyres.
- Do not install snow chains by deflating the tyres.
- If you hear unusual noises from snow chains during driving, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection.

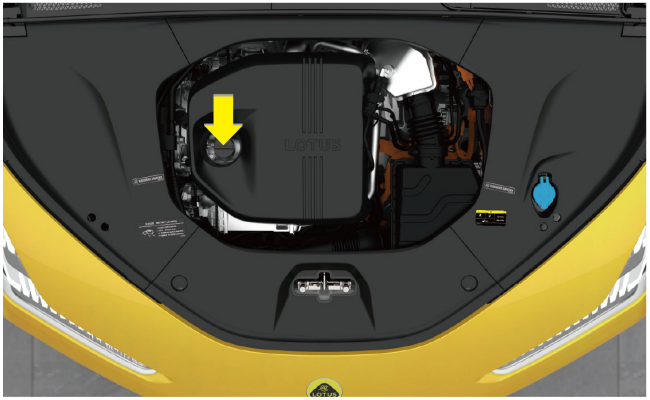
Checking under the hood of the front compartment

Engine oil

Check and add engine oil

When the engine oil level is low, the driver display will display a corresponding prompt message, you can add engine oil in the following ways:

1. Park the vehicle on a flat road surface, turn off the engine, and wait for a few minutes (when the engine is warmed up to a water temperature of 90 degrees Celsius, it is necessary to shut down for 10 minutes).
2. Unscrew the engine oil filler cap and add engine oil.



Engine oil filler opening

3. After adding, wait for a few minutes and check if the "low engine oil level" prompt on the driver display disappears. If it does not disappear, add an appropriate amount of engine oil.
4. Tighten the engine oil filler cap.

! Caution!

Please follow the provisions of this manual and regularly change the engine oil.

ⓘ Note!

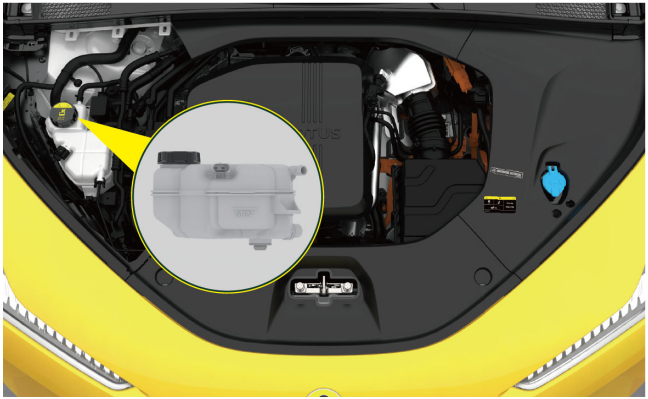
- The engine may consume more engine oil during the Run-In Period, which is normal.
- Please dispose of used engine oil in accordance with relevant environmental protection laws.

Coolant

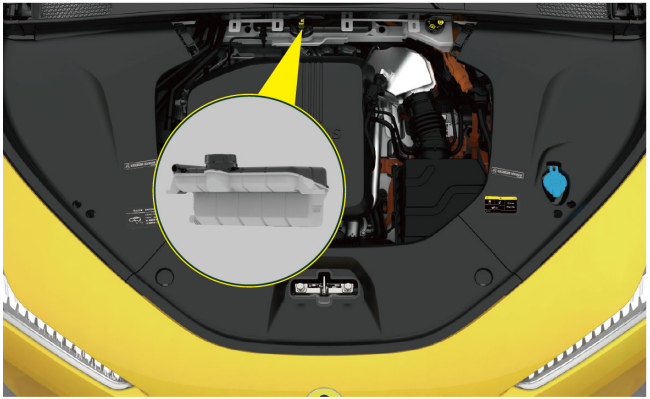
The vehicle has been filled with coolant at delivery. When the fluid level in the coolant reservoir is lower than the recommended level, the driver display will display a corresponding prompt. If you receive corresponding prompt while driving, park your vehicle in a safe area, and contact your Lotus retailer or the Lotus Customer Care Centre immediately.

When the vehicle is subject to maintenance, the technicians of Lotus Customer Care Centre will check the coolant and add in case of shortage.

Insufficient coolant



Drive motor coolant storage tank



Engine coolant storage tank

Check the coolant level regularly to ensure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks.

If the coolant level is lower than the recommended level, stop driving as soon as safety allows and contact the Lotus retailer.

⚠ Warning!

Do not open the coolant reservoir lid at high temperatures avoid personal injury caused by coolant splashing under excessive air pressure in the reservoir when the lid is being opened.

Caution!

If you find that the coolant is insufficient, it should be added by either an authorised technician or your Lotus retailer. Never add the coolant by yourself.

Note!

Please treat the used coolant in accordance with applicable environmental protection laws.

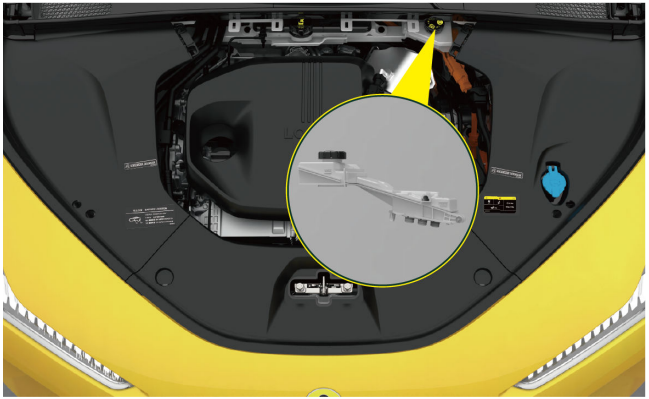
Brake fluid

Warning!

- When the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is lower than the recommended level, the driver will display a warning message. If you receive a warning message while driving, park your vehicle in a safe area, and contact your Lotus retailer immediately.
- If you notice the brake pedal becoming soft/spongy when depressed significant loss of brake fluid, contact your Lotus retailer immediately. Driving in these situations may result in an extended braking distance or complete braking failure.

When the vehicle is subject to maintenance, your Lotus retailer will check the brake fluid and add in case of shortage.

Insufficient brake fluid



Check the brake fluid level regularly to ensure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks.

If the brake fluid is lower than the recommended level, contact your Lotus retailer immediately.

Warning!

Brake fluid is highly toxic. Containers should be kept tightly sealed and out of reach of children. If the brake fluid gets onto your skin or into eyes, wash immediately with plenty of water and go to the doctor immediately.

Caution!

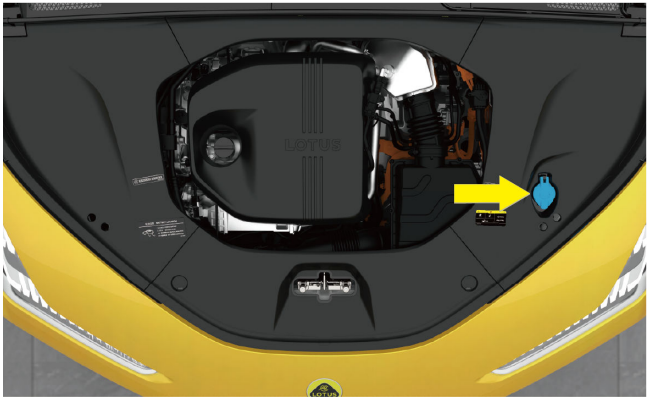
- Brake fluid can damage the paint surface. The spill can be immediately absorbed with an absorbent cloth and the affected area must be cleaned with car cleaner product mixed with water.
- If the brake fluid is found to be insufficient, it should be added by a professional staff. Never add the brake fluid by yourself.

Windscreen washer fluid

Regularly check the windscreen washer fluid. When the fluid in the reservoir is less than 1.0 L, a message will appear on the driver display, reminding you to refill the washer fluid in time.

Operate the washer regularly and check whether the washer jet is clogged and can spray properly.

Filling windscreen washer fluid



Windscreen washer fluid filler opening

1. Clean the reservoir cap to prevent dust from entering the reservoir.
2. Open the reservoir cap.
3. Add washer fluid until the fluid level reaches the lower edge of the filler port.

Caution!

When the outdoor temperature is lower than 4°C, please empty the washer fluid in the reservoir immediately, and use washer fluid which contain suitable anti-freeze solutions that are applicable to

current temperature to prevent the washer fluid from freezing and affecting the cleaning function or damaging the reservoir.

Pollen filter

The pollen filter stops air that contains dust, pollen, and certain odours from entering the vehicle cabin. In case of very strong odours, they may not be completely removed by the pollen filter from the air that will be introduced into the A/C system. The pollen filter is regularly replaced as part of the maintenance schedule. When you drive your car to Lotus retailer for scheduled maintenance, the staff of Lotus Customer Care Centre will check or replace the pollen filter according to the maintenance interval and the actual situation.

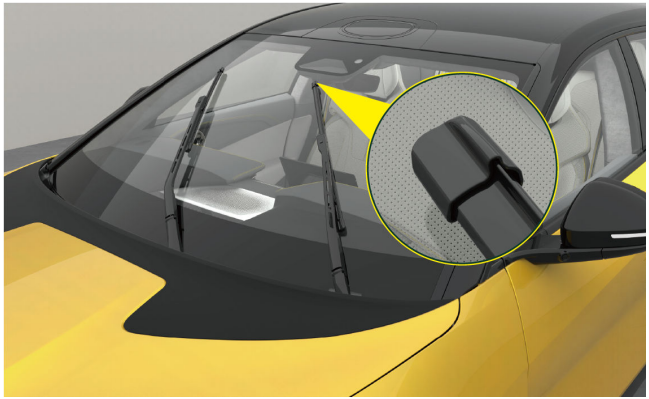
ⓘ Note!

When driving frequently in dusty conditions, your Lotus retailer may recommend it is replaced more regularly.

Inspection and replacement of wiper blade

Replacement of wiper blade

Before replacing the front wiper blade, activate ⚙ – **Vehicle** – **Windscreen Maintenance** on the centre screen display, and the front wiper arms will move to the maintenance position.



Wiper blade strip cover

Please follow this procedure when replacing the wiper blade strip:

1. After the front wiper arm enters the maintenance mode, the wiper arm will rest on the windscreen. At this time, you can lift

the wiper arm and adjust the wiper blade to a certain angle until a "click" is heard.

2. Remove the wiper blade strip cover as indicated by the arrow and pull out the wiper blade strip.
3. Install the new wiper blade strip into the wiper blade.
4. After replacing the wiper blade strip, lower the wiper arms, operate the wiper lever or deactivate the **Windscreen Maintenance** on centre screen display, then the wipers will return to the bottom position.

Caution!

- Before activating **Windscreen Maintenance,** make sure the wiper blade is not frozen on the windscreen.
- After the wiper blade is replaced, ensure that the wiper arm is slowly restored to its original position to avoid damaging the windscreen due to excessive return force of the wiper arm.

Maintenance of wiper blade strip

The contaminants on windscreen or wiper blade rubber may reduce the effectiveness of the wiper blade. The contaminants include ice, vehicle wax, cleaning fluids containing bacteria or waterproof agent, bird droppings, tree sap, and other organic materials.

Regularly clean the edge of the wiper blade rubber and check for cracks, rips and roughness in the rubber. If damaged, please contact your Lotus retailer.

Caution!

- The surface of the wiper blade rubber is applied with a layer of graphite, which ensures smooth wiping and eliminates wiping noise. Solvent-based cleaning agent, hard sponges and sharp edge tools can damage the graphite layer. If the graphite layer is damaged, the wiping noise of wiper will increase. In this case, you should replace the wiper as soon as possible.
- In winter or cold weather, check whether the wiper blade rubbers are frozen on the windscreen before using the wipers. If the windshield is not de-iced first, the wiper blade rubbers and wiper motor may be damaged.

Note!

To ensure the cleaning effect, you are recommended to use cleaning products that have been certified by appropriate authorities and approved for use on automotive windscreen and rubber.

Exterior maintenance

Washing your vehicle frequently helps to maintain the good appearance of your vehicle. Washing should be carried out in a cool

place. If the vehicle has been exposed to the sun for a long time, we recommend you wait for the body surface to cool down before washing.

If using an automatic car washer, be sure to follow the instructions of the washer operator.

When washing the vehicle using a pressure washer, please direct the water flow at the window instead of the edge of the window so as to prevent water from entering the inside of the vehicle.

In northern regions in winter, each time after the car is washed, you should wipe water from the gap near the door handle so as to avoid freezing which may hinder the door handle from unfolding electrically.

To prevent damage to vehicle paint, you should remove corrosive substances (bird droppings, resin, insects, asphalt spots, road salt, industrial dust, etc.) as soon as possible and before vehicle washing.

Washing the bodywork should be performed as follows:

1. Preparation before cleaning: close the bonnet, doors, windows and tailgate, and check whether the charging port is completely closed.
2. Thorough rinsing: rinse off dirt and grit from the vehicle body with a hose before washing. Rinse areas that can easily accumulate dust, mud or road salt, for example, vehicle mudguard.
3. Hand wash: add a high-quality neutral vehicle cleaner in cold or warm water, using a soft cloth, and hand wash the outside of the vehicle body.
4. Rinsing with clean water: after washing, rinse with clean water to prevent any residual soap liquid on the surface from getting dry.
5. Wiping with soft cloth: wipe water from the surface of the vehicle with soft absorbent cloth.

⚠ Warning!

Do not wash the inside of the bonnet with water, otherwise an electrical fault may occur and cause a serious accident.

! Caution!

- Do not wash the vehicle with acid-based cleaner. Acids can damage vehicle surface and affect vehicle appearance.
- Do not use strong alkaline soap, strong chemical cleaning agents (such as strong alkaline cleaning agents, tap water, self-cleaning agents), gasoline or solvents to clean the vehicle, as this may affect the appearance of the vehicle.
- Do not use acidic, alkaline and other chemical cleaning agents, petrol or other organic solvents to clean tyres and rims, as this may damage the tyre and wheel surface.

- In regions where the roads are applied with a layer of salt in winter, the underbody should be cleaned regularly to prevent salt build-up which may accelerate corrosion of the underbody and the suspension.
- Before washing the outside of the vehicle, check that all closures of the vehicle are properly closed.
- After washing, wipe the surface of the vehicle clean, otherwise the residual cleaner may corrode the outside surface of the vehicle.
- Do not use lint or coarse cloth, such as vehicle washing gloves.

Automatic washing

Automatic car washers are convenient and efficient, but they cannot wash the vehicle thoroughly. Lotus recommends washing your vehicle by hand to get the best results.

Caution!

When using an automatic car wash:

- Make sure the door mirrors are folded, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.
- The vehicle should be able to move freely and the automatic parking function must be disabled.
- Disable the automatic wiper function and ensure that the hidden door handles are retracted, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.

High-pressure washing

When using a high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, please follow the operating instructions for the equipment, especially the working pressure and spray distance. The nozzle should not get too close to soft materials such as rubber hoses or seals.

Warning!

If you need to use the vehicle immediately after washing, depress the brake pedal several times to remove moisture from the brake pads. Moisture may affect the braking efficiency.

Caution!

- Do not wash the sensors with high-pressure washer or steam washer, otherwise they may be damaged. Wash all sensor surfaces with a small flow of water for a short time and keep a distance of at least 10 cm from it during washing.
- Before washing the vehicle, check that all closures of the vehicle are properly closed.
- In cold winter, it is recommended that the high-pressure washing time of the side radar box be less than 2 minutes.

Do not spray water directly into the gap of the side radar box cover directly to avoid excessive water accumulation inside the radar box, which may cause internal mechanisms to freeze and prevent the lidar from extending.

- The vehicle should be washed in strict accordance with the operating instructions of the high-pressure washer, with particular attention paid to the working pressure and the spray distance. If a pressure washer is used, make sure the nozzle is at least 30 cm away from the surface of the body. Keep moving the nozzle frequently other than spraying water to one area continuously, otherwise high-pressure water flow may go into vehicle parts and cause gradual damage. Do not direct the nozzle at the charging port and spray water to the port.

Polishing and waxing

High-quality wax can protect vehicle paint against environmental damages and even minor scratches. In case that the water droplets can no longer smoothly fall from the painted surface of clean body, you should immediately apply a layer of high-quality hard wax as curing agent on the paint of the vehicle. If you use curing agent regularly, it is recommended to apply a layer of hard wax at least twice a year to protect the body paint.

Polishing is only required when the body paint does not show any lustre and waxing can no longer ensure glossy paint. Parts applied with matte paint or plastic parts should not be polished.

Cleaning of windows and wing mirrors

- The windows and wing mirrors should be cleaned with alcohol-based glass cleaner. After cleaning, the liquid on the surface of the glass should be dried with clean, soft, lint-free cloth or chamois cloth.
- After the body surface is maintained, remove residual wax from the glass with special cleaner and cleaning cloth to prevent the wiper blade from being scratched.
- Remove snow from windows and door mirrors with a small brush.
- The accumulated ice can be removed by deicer spray or a suitable small plastic deicing shovel. However, you must be specially cautious to avoid damaging the parts de-iced or scraped, and the ice must be scraped in the same direction.

! Caution!

- Never remove snow and ice from windscreens and door mirrors with hot water. Otherwise, the glass may crack or shatter.
- Residual rubber, grease and silicone substances on the glass must be removed with suitable window cleaner or silicone cleaner.

Maintenance of sealing strip

Remove dust and dirt from the surface of the sealing strip using soft cloth during maintenance. Regularly apply special protective agent to the surface of the sealing strip.

Interior maintenance

Use Lotus-recommended cleaners and vehicle maintenance products as much as possible. Regularly clean the vehicle inside with a vacuum cleaner.

Caution!

- Some coloured clothes (such as dark jeans, sheepskin or Alcantara clothing) or cosmetics may stain the interior fabrics. If so, clean and take measures to protect the affected areas as soon as possible.
- Do not use washer fluid, gasoline or liquor, and other strong solvents to clean the interiors of the vehicle, as this may damage the interior fabrics and other interior materials.
- Do not spray cleaners directly on parts with electrical buttons and controls.
- During cleaning, do not use sharp objects to avoid damaging the interior materials.

Maintenance and cleaning of leather interiors

Leather is a natural fabric that will change and develop exquisite lustre over time. To keep the performance, colour and lustre of the leather, you should regularly clean and maintain the leather materials. Otherwise, the dirt and grease may gradually impair the protective layer of the leather.

When maintaining the leather material inside the vehicle, please use the special maintenance products for leather recommended by Lotus for cleaning/maintenance.

Note!

- Clean the dirt on the surface of light coloured leather as soon as possible;
- Dry as soon as possible when water drips on the leather surface;
- A little dirt or dust can be gently wiped with a thoroughly wrung white cloth (soaked with pure water), and then open the window to let it dry naturally or dry it gently with a dry rag. Do not expose to high temperature or dry it with an electric hair dryer;
- When maintaining the leather materials in the car, avoid contacting solvents (such as butanone, acetone, liquor, methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.), detergents (such as washing powder, detergent, detergent, etc.), disinfectants, gasoline and other reagents, which may cause discoloration or damage to the leather surface.

Maintenance and cleaning of Alcantara interiors

Alcantara material is highly practical and has the characteristics of soft texture and full colour. In addition, they have certain degree of dirt resistance, and the advantage of being relatively easy to clean after getting dirty, making them easy to maintain.

In order to maintain the appearance of this material, please use special maintenance products for Alcantara recommended by Lotus for cleaning/maintenance.

If no special detergents are available when you are cleaning Alcantara products, you can observe the following instructions:

1. Use a soft bristled brush, dry cloth, or vacuum cleaner for surface cleaning.
2. Gently wipe the surface of Alcantara with a thoroughly wrung white cloth or sponge (soaked in pure water), and then open the window for ventilation to let it dry naturally. After drying, gently comb down with a soft bristle brush to restore the fabric to its original state.

! Caution!

- When small stains appear, they should be treated immediately to avoid spreading or depositing, while avoiding friction to prevent the stains from spreading or penetrating the material.
- Do not use steam equipment during cleaning.

Maintenance and cleaning of seat belt

Pull out the seat belt and wipe it. After cleaning, let it dry naturally.

⚠ Warning!

Do not use bleach, dyes or chemical solvents to clean seat belts. These materials can seriously impair the fabric performance of seat belts.

Maintenance and cleaning of floor mats

To prolong the service life of the carpet on the vehicle, you should clean the floor mats regularly and install them properly. If the floor mats are excessively worn, replace them as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning!

- Ensure that floor mats, carpets and other items are secure to avoid hindering the movement of the pedals.
- Make sure to fasten the floor mats to the floor with the fixings provided on the vehicle floor.

Maintenance and cleaning of centre screen display(CSD)

The dust, dirt and grease on your fingers can affect the performance and clarity of the centre screen display. Clean the display frequently with microfibre cloth.

Caution!

- Keep the centre screen display and electrical components away from liquids and moisture to prevent them from being affected or damaged.
- During cleaning, do not press with excessive force or use abrasive materials, as this may cause damage.

Precautions during run-in period

In order to ensure your new vehicle has the optimal performance and stability, Lotus recommends you to pay attention to the run-in of the new vehicle at the initial period of use (i.e., 1,000km). During this period, you need to perform daily inspections to identify and eliminate problems in advance, so as to improve the run-in quality:

- Before driving, make sure that the tyre pressures are within the standard range, and the coolant and brake fluid are sufficient. If there are relevant prompts or warnings on the driver display, then attend to them immediately.
- If you notice any unusual noises while driving, you should stop the car for inspection, and contact your Lotus retailer for the problem that you cannot solve by yourself.
- Please avoid driving at a low speed or high speed for a long time when the vehicle is fully loaded.
- Always drive at a constant speed and sudden braking should be avoided as much as possible.
- When the specified driving mileage or the specified maintenance interval has been reached, please have your Lotus retailer perform your vehicles first scheduled service.
- Do not idle the engine at high speed in neutral gear.
- Avoid driving at a constant vehicle speed or engine speed for an extended period.

Brake run-in

For either the new brakes on your new vehicle or after brake pad or disc replacement, the brake pads have not reached their optimum condition and cannot deliver the best braking effect, so run-in is required.

During the first 500km of your new vehicle, or after brake pad or disc replacement, you should keep your vehicle at a longer than usual safe distance from the vehicles ahead while driving and avoid sudden braking as much as possible.



EMERGENCY |

Guidance for traffic accidents

When the car is involved in a traffic accident, follow the steps below:

1. Park the car (if it can still be driven normally after the accident) in a safe place and turn on the hazard warning lamps. If the car needs towing, please contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre.
2. Take out the reflective vest from the glove box and put it on.
3. Take out the warning triangle from the boot storage box.
4. Place the warning triangle behind the car as specified.

⚠ Warning!

- In the event of an emergency traffic accident, personal injury or major fire, please contact for rescue as soon as possible.
- In the event of a vehicle fire, passengers should exit the vehicle swiftly, call emergency services, and let them know that the vehicle is hybrid electric with high-voltage components.

Emergency call



SOS button cover

In the event of an emergency and you need urgent assistance, follow these steps:

1. Firmly press or flip the small edge of the SOS button protection cover located in between the front reading lamps upwards/ outwards to open the cover and access the SOS button.
2. Press and hold the SOS button for 2 seconds to make an emergency call.

The different colours of the LED indicator on the SOS button indicate the current status of emergency call system:

- Green LED on indicates: emergency call system is activated.
- Green LED flashing indicates: call service active /call ongoing/ incoming call ringing.
- Red LED on indicates: call service exception/ unavailable/ DTC fault.
- LED OFF indicates: emergency call system standby/sleep/off.

⚠ Warning!

When the LED indicator on the SOS button is red, go immediately to your Lotus retailer for service.

When the SOS button is pressed, an emergency call screen will appear on centre screen display.

When any of the vehicle's airbags or seat belt pretensioners are activated, the road rescue system automatically activates and sends a signal to the Lotus Customer Care Centre. The Lotus Customer Care Centre will provide appropriate assistance (ambulance, police, etc.).

When the emergency call is made successfully, the relevant service personnel of the emergency call centre will ask for your consent to record the conversation and sound in your vehicle, and some of the information of the vehicle (such as VIN) will be transmitted to the emergency call centre together with the vehicle location information.

⚠ Warning!

It is important to leave the vehicle immediately after an emergency call is made in the following cases:

- After an accident.
- The vehicle cannot be driven and in a hazardous area on the road.
- When the vehicle is not clearly visible to drivers in other lanes due to low light or low visibility.

⚠ Warning!

- If there is a dangerous situation, do not stay in the car to use the SOS calling.
- In the event of a serious collision (e.g. airbag deployment), the E-call function will be automatically activated. If only a minor collision occurs, the function may not be activated automatically.
- In the event of an accident that causes a power outage in your vehicle, the emergency call function may fail to operate properly, and at this time you should get help by other means.

ⓘ Note!

- The SOS button should only be used in an emergency, such as an accident, illness or a threat to the driver or passenger. Misuse of this button may incur additional charges.
- When you trigger an emergency rescue call by mistake, you can cancel the call by pressing the SOS button again for a short period of time.
- When there is an owner transfer and the car is sold and used in another country, please visit the local Lotus retailer to set up the proper Lotus SOS service in order for the new owner to receive the support accordingly.
- The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.
- After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.

Hazard warning device

Hazard warning lamps



Hazard warning lights switch

In case of emergency during driving, press the hazard warning lamp switch to activate the hazard warning lamps.

ⓘ Note!

The hazard warning lamps may also be automatically activated by the vehicle safety systems in case of collision or emergency braking.

Warning triangle

If an emergency situation occurs and it is impossible to drive, turn on the hazard warning lamp, take out the warning triangle from the boot storage box and place it at a sufficient distance from the rear. Please comply with local laws and regulations for specific placement distance.

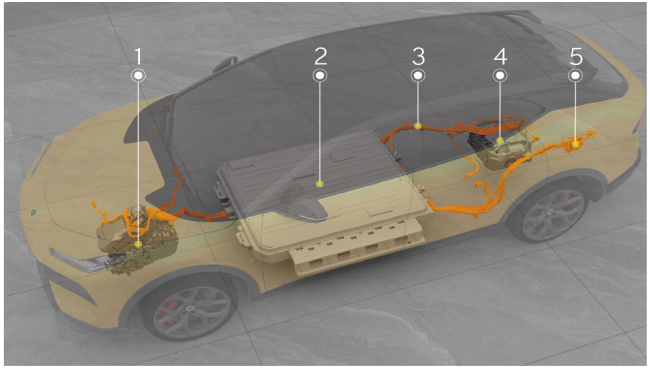
Reflective vests



The reflective vest is stored in the glove box. If you make an emergency stop on the road, please be sure to wear a reflective vest when getting out of the car. Wearing a reflective vest increases visibility and reduces the risk of accidents.

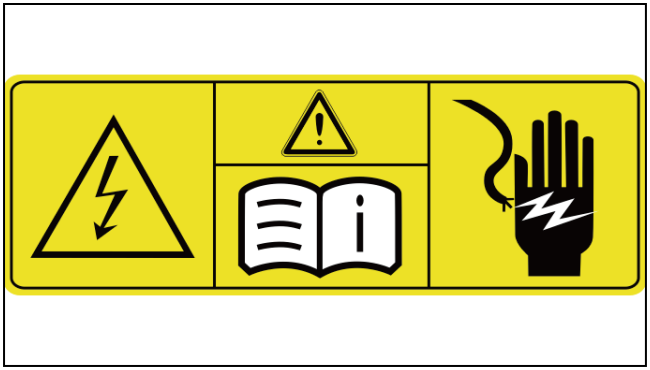
High voltage system information

Overview of HV system



1. Front drive motor
2. High voltage battery
3. HV wire harness
4. Rear drive motor
5. Charging port

Safety sign information



High voltage components are attached with warning signs. Do not touch, disassemble or replace such components.



Warning signs of high voltage connectors.

⚠ Warning!

Never touch, disassemble or replace parts and components with high voltage warning signs, orange cables and their connectors on vehicles without permission, so as to avoid personal injuries or casualties.

Module	Battery Model	Voltage	Battery Type	Manufacture Name	Address	Marking
BATTERY-MAIN	12V-12.5Ah	12.8V	Lithium-ion battery	Zhejiang Guanyu Battery Co., Ltd.	No.666, Jinzhou Road, Haiyan County, Jiax	CE

Module	BatteryModel	Voltage	BatteryType	ManufacturerName	Address	Marking
					ingCity,ZhejiangProvince	
FOB	PanasonicCR2	3V	CoinPrimarylithi	PanasonicEnerg	1-1Matsushita-ch	

Module	BatteryModel	Voltage	BatteryType	ManufacturerName	Address	Marking
	032		umbatttery	yCo.,Ltd.	o,MoriguchiCity,Osaka570-8511,Japan	
TP	MA	3V	Coi	Max	Taku	

Module	Battery Model	Voltage	Battery Type	Manufacture Name	Address	Marking
MS	XELLCR2032HRHAOS-T41		ntypelithiummanganesedioxidebattery	ell, Ltd.	midai 5, Ono-shi, Hyogo, 675-1322 Japan	

Module	Battery Model	Voltage	Battery Type	Manufacture Name	Address	Marking
TCAM	FDK3HR-AAUTEW-NSC-4	3.6V	Nickel-Metalhydridebattery	FDKCORPORATION	Shibaura Crystal Shinagawa, 1-6-41 Konan, Mina	

Module	BatteryModel	Voltage	BatteryType	ManufacturerName	Address	Marking
					to-ku, Tokyo 108-8212 Japan	
BBS	FDKCR1733	3V	Primary lithiu	FDKCORP	Shibaura Crys	

Module	BatteryModel	Voltage	BatteryType	ManufacturerName	Address	Marking
	35EG-ZZ6		mbatter y	ORATION	talShinagawa, 1-6-41 Konan, Minato-ku, Tokyo	

Module	Battery Model	Voltage	Battery Type	Manufacture Name	Address	Marking
					108-8212 Japan	
PHEV Battery	NBP701	787V	Lithium-ion battery	Quzhou Jidian Electric Vehicl	Building 1, No.18 Baozhi Roa	

Module	Battery Model	Voltage	Battery Type	Manufacture Name	Address	Marking
				eTechnology Co., Ltd.	d, Quzhou City, Zhejiang Province	

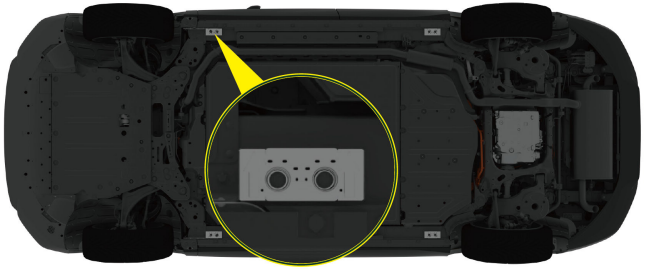
Vehicle lifting

⚠ Warning!

The vehicle must be fixed or lifted at the specified lifting points, as the high voltage battery pack is installed at the bottom of this vehicle. Failure to do so may cause damage to the battery pack, resulting in accidents.

The vehicle lifting steps are as follows:

1. Before lifting, tap the icon on centre screen display to select **Vehicle** and turn on the **Jack mode** .
2. Make sure all doors, the tailgate and the bonnet are closed, and place the lift arm contact pad at the specified lifting points.



3. Adjust the height and position of lift arm contact pad and place it properly.
4. Raise the lift, and make sure the lift arm contact pad is kept at a proper position.

⚠ Warning!

- The lifting of the vehicle should be performed by qualified persons.
- Never lift the vehicle when it is charging or connected with a charging cable.
- Before lifting the vehicle, make sure the lift arm contact pad is placed at specified lifting point so as to avoid vehicle damage or personal injury during vehicle lifting.

Caution!

- Since this vehicle is equipped with air suspension, be sure to switch to jack mode before lifting to avoid damages to the vehicle.
- The vehicle must be lifted at the specified lifting point by using a suitable automotive. Otherwise damages to the vehicle may be caused.

Jump starting

When the vehicle doors cannot be unlocked due to weak battery, you can refer to **Emergency door unlocking from outside** (p.69) to help you unlock the door in emergency, so as to complete the jump starting.

Caution!

- Do not use batteries with voltage greater than 12V for jump starting.
- Be sure to connect the jumper cable carefully to avoid short circuit due to contact with other components.
- At jump starting, the two vehicles must not come into contact with each other. Otherwise, once the battery positive of the two vehicles are connected, the current may begin to flow immediately, causing short circuit and damages to vehicles.
- For jump starting, be sure to connect the positive terminal first, and then the negative terminal.
- Jump starting is not possible for lead-acid batteries.
- If you encounter any problems during jump starting, please contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre immediately.

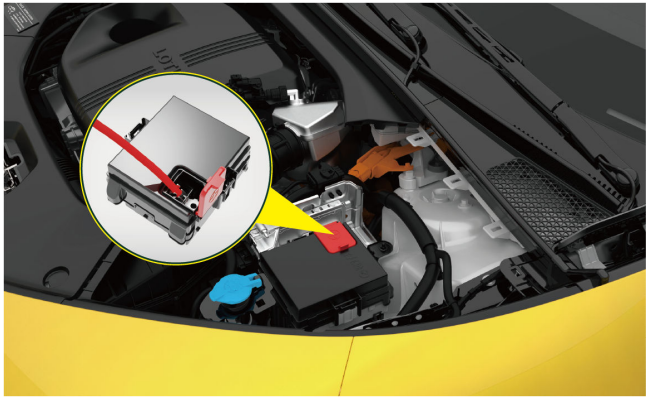
Note!

Once the engine has started, keep t it running for at least 20 minutes to ensure that the battery is charged to the working voltage.

Jump starting in bonnet

In case that a car cannot be started normally because of a discharged weak battery, you can start the car by connecting a jumper cable in the bonnet fuse box to the battery of another car.

The specific steps are as follows:



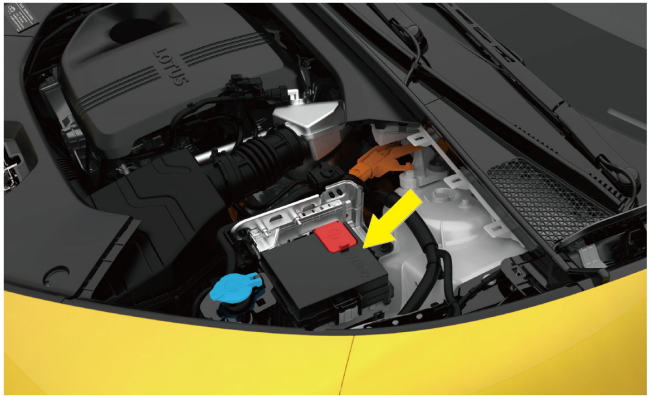
1. Park the vehicle in a safe area, and open the fuse box cover located under the bonnet.
2. Disconnect the front cabin low voltage maintenance plug to disconnect the high voltage system, refer to the **Release method of high-voltage system** (p.353).
3. Connect one end of the red cable to the fuse box terminal of the car with dead battery.
4. Connect the other end of the red cable to the positive (+) terminal of the battery in booster car.
5. Connect one end of the black cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery in booster car.
6. Connect the other end of the black cable to any metal body part in the bonnet of the car with dead battery.
7. After ensuring that the jump start cable is securely connected, close the low-voltage maintenance plug in the front cabin to connect to the high-voltage system.
8. Start the booster car, and a few minutes later, start the car with dead battery. Check whether the car with dead battery can start normally.
9. After the car with dead battery starts normally, disconnect the power supply of booster car, remove the jumper cable in reverse order of the connection.

Caution!

- When using an external power supply, please use a device with an output voltage ranging from 12.4V to 14.4V and equipped with overvoltage protection, overcurrent protection, short-circuit protection, and reverse connection protection functions.
- NEVER use external power supplies with a 24V voltage, other voltage platforms, or switchable voltage gears.
- Never use a lead-acid battery charger to charge the battery.

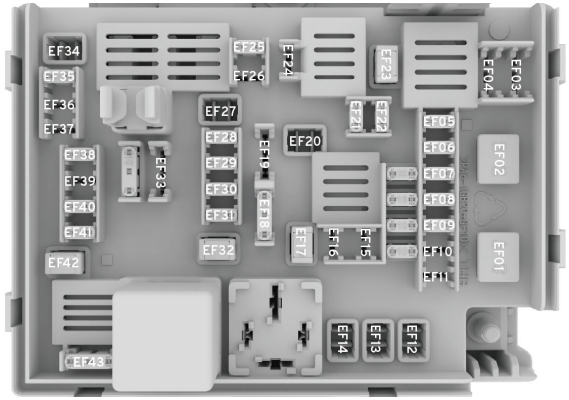
Replace fuse

Bonnet fuse box



Bonnet fuse box

Open the bonnet to identify the bonnet fuse box.



Fuse information		
No.	**Function**	**Ampere (A)**
EF01	Brake controller	60
EF02	Hybrid control module	60
EF03-A	Reserve	10
EF03-B	Reserve	10
EF04-A	Reserve	10
EF04-B	Reserve	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF05	Carbon canister solenoid valve / Intake VVT solenoid valve / Electronic pressure relief valve / Oil pump / Fuel tank isolation valve / Fuel leak diagnostic module	10
EF06	Engine control unit	25
EF07	Rear oxygen sensor / Front oxygensensor	15
EF08	Ignition coil 1 / Ignition coil 2 / Ignition coil 3 / Ignition coil 4	20
EF09	Connect to the rear electrical box	7.5
EF10	Reserve	10
EF11	Reserve	20
EF12	Reserve	40

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF13	Reserve	40
EF14	Reserve	40
EF15	Reserve	20
EF16	Reserve	10
EF17	Wash pump relay	20
EF18-A	Backup battery alarm	7.5
EF18-B	Brake switch	7.5
EF19-A	Reserve	10
EF19-B	Reserve	10
EF20	Reserve	40
EF21	Right front headlight	20
EF22	Left front headlight	20
EF23	Reserve	40
EF24	Reserve	10

Fuse information		
No.	**Function**	**Ampere (A)**
EF25	Klaxon relay	20
EF26	Reserve	10
EF27	Reserve	40
EF28	High voltage battery/electric heater	7.5
EF29	Vehicle controller	15
EF30	Battery radiator water pump	20
EF31	Heating circuit water pump	20
EF32	Drive motor cooling water pump	25
EF33-A	Reserve	10
EF33-B	Reserve	10
EF34	Reserve	30
EF35	CPSR relay	7.5

Fuse information		
No.	**Function**	**Ampere (A)**
EF36	Reserve	20
EF37	Reserve	20
EF38	Right front obstacle detection radar / Left front obstacle detection radar	7.5
EF39	Hybrid control module	7.5
EF40	Hybrid control module	7.5
EF41	Engine control unit	10
EF42	Reserve	25
EF43-A	Electronic expansion valve / Electric air conditioning compressor / Powertrain coolant three-way valve	7.5
EF43-B	HVAC normally closed solenoid valve / Condenser	7.5

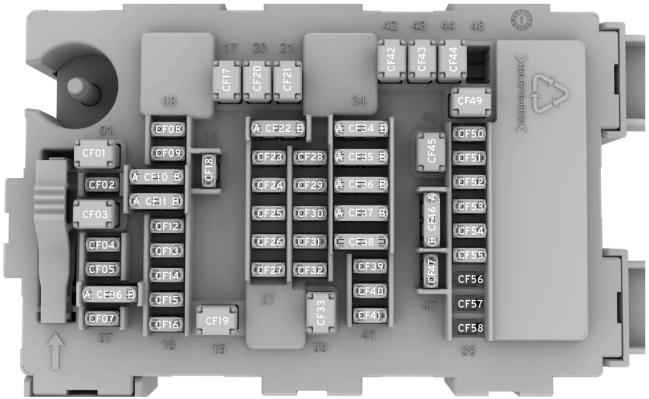
Fuse information		
No.	**Function**	**Ampere (A)**
	electric expansion valve / Evaporator electronic expansion valve / Thermal management module	

Central fuse box



Central fuse box

The central fuse box is located on the front right side of the centre console, which can be viewed by removing the right front bezel of the tunnel console.



Fuse information		
No.	**Function**	**Ampere (A)**
CF01	Wiper motor	30
CF02	Reserve	30
CF03	Reserve	30
CF04	Left intelligent interactive display	10

Fuse information		
No.	**Function**	**Ampere (A)**
CF05	Variable intake grille / Right active intake grille control module	10
CF06–A	Driver status monitoring controller / Interior light controller	10
CF06–B	Left vanity mirror light / Right vanity mirror light / Interior rearview mirror / Glove box light switch	10
CF07	Reserve	10
CF08	Restraint system controller	10
CF09	Engine Control Unit (ECU)	10
CF10–A	48V DCDC converter / 48V supercapacitor	10

Fuse information		
No.	**Function**	**Ampere (A)**
CF10–B	Passenger seat OWS/OBD diagnostic connector	10
CF11–A	Streaming media controller	10
CF11–B	Front-view millimetre-wave radar / Autopilot main controller	10
CF12	Accelerator pedal sensor	15
CF13	Electric Power Steering (EPS) / Body Domain Controller (BDC) / Electronic shifter / Vehicle Control Unit (VCU) / Brake controller	10
CF14	Combination switch	15
CF15	Anion generator / Air quality PM2.5 sensor	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF16	Right intelligent interactive display	10
CF17	Body Domain Controller (BDC)	40
CF18	Left front door module / Right front door module / Internal Bluetooth and NFC key communication module / Key reader module	20
CF19	Reserve	30
CF20	Body Domain Controller (BDC)	40
CF21	Right electric safety belt control module	30
CF22-A	Reserve	10
CF22-B	Reserve	10
CF23	Driver's seat lumbar support control valve / Driver's seat	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
	lumbar support controller / Driver's seat massage module / Right rear seat massage / Right rear seat lumbar support control valve / Left rear seat massage / Left rear seat lumbar support control valve / Passenger seat massage module / Passenger seat lumbar support control	
CF24	Reserve	25
CF25	Reserve	10
CF26	Reserve	10
CF27	Heads-up Display (HUD)	10
CF28	Reserve	10
CF29	Reserve	10

Fuse information		
No.	**Function**	**Ampere (A)**
CF30	Vehicle mobile terminal	10
CF31	Electronic shifter	10
CF32	Passenger display screen / Sunlight and rainfall sensor	10
CF33	Reserve	30
CF34–A	Streaming media controller	10
CF34–B	Diagnostic interface	10
CF35–A	Front interior radar module / Rear interior radar module / Alcohol lock	10
CF35–B	Combination switch / Interior motion sensor	10
CF36–A	In-vehicle infotainment display	10

Fuse information		
No.	**Function**	**Ampere (A)**
CF36–B	Central control switch module / Instrument cluster display	10
CF37–A	Key reader module / Internal Bluetooth and NFC key communication module	10
CF37–B	Gateway	10
CF38–A	Air conditioning controller	10
CF38–B	Air conditioning controller	10
CF39	Reserve	10
CF40	Infotainment host	15
CF41	Reserve	20
CF42	Left front door module	30
CF43	Reserve	25

Fuse information		
No.	**Function**	**Ampere (A)**
CF44	Right front door module	30
CF45	Reserve	30
CF46-A	Right rear door map pocket ambient light / Right front door map pocket ambient light / Left rear door map pocket ambient light / Left front door map pocket ambient light / Left rear footwell light / Right rear footwell light / Left front footwell light / Right front footwell light / centre console storage box ambient light	10
CF46-B	Overhead light module	10
CF47	Front-row wireless charging	15

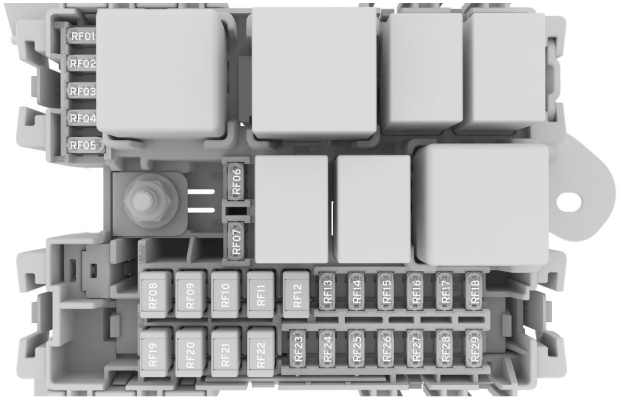
Fuse information		
No.	**Function**	**Ampere (A)**
CF49	Front air conditioning blower relay	40
CF50	Front active stabilizer bar controller / Rear active stabilizer bar controller	10
CF51	Rear centre console entertainment screen lifting module	10
CF52	Front USB box	15
CF53	Steering wheel adjustment module	15
CF54	Reserve	25
CF55	Reserve	25

Rear electric fuse box



Rear electric fuse box

Remove the boot storage box to find the rear electric fuse box.

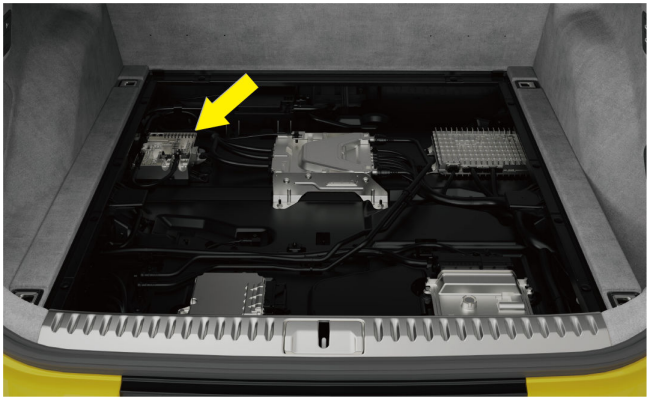


Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RF01	Rear backup power interface	20
RF02	Rear USB power supply	15
RF03	Left rear taillight	10
RF04	Right rear taillight	10
RF05	Through-tail light	10

Fuse information		
RF06	Front 12V power socket	20
RF07	Air suspension controller	10
RF08	Air suspension compressor relay	50
RF09	Reserve	30
RF10	Rear defrost	30
RF11	Electric tailgate control module	30
RF12	Trailer module	30
RF13	Step monitoring module	10
RF14	Vehicle Control Unit (VCU) module	20
RF15	Rear electric drive system motor (IEM)	10
RF16	Vehicle Control Unit (VCU)	20
RF17	LiDAR relay	10

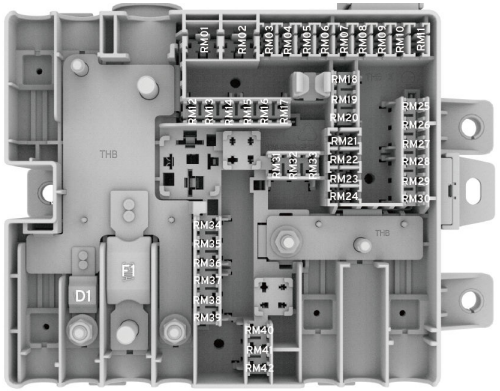
Fuse information		
RF18	Rear electric drive system motor (IEM)	20
RF19	Fuel pump relay	20
RF20	Power socket relay	40
RF21	Air suspension controller	30
RF22	Trailer module	40
RF23	Vehicle Control Unit (VCU)	20
RF24	Active tail motor (AWM)	20
RF25	Rear taillight	15
RF26	Rear electric drive system motor (IEM)	10
RF27	Rear defrost relay / Power socket relay / Rear taillight relay	10
RF28	Vehicle Control Unit (VCU)	10
RF29	VCU main relay	10

Rear main distribution fuse box



Rear main distribution fuse box

Remove the boot storage box to find the rear main distribution fuse box.



Fuse information		
No.	**Function**	**Ampere (A)**
C1	48V DCDC	125
D1	Trunk fuse box	125
E1	Reserve	150
F1	Battery fuse box	350
G1	12V battery	/
K1	Reserve	125

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
L1	Reserve	125
RM01	Auxiliary driving main controller	30
RM02	Reserve	60
RM03	Audio module	30
RM04	Audio module	30
RM05	Audio module	30
RM06	Audio module	30
RM07	Left rear door module	30
RM08	Right rear door module	30
RM09	Driver's seat inner connection	30
RM10	Inside passenger seat connection	30
RM11	High voltage battery	30

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RM12	Left side obstacle detection radar	10
RM12	Right side obstacle detection radar	10
RM13	Charging port cover controller	10
RM14	Reserve	20
RM15	High voltage battery	10
RM16	Rear seat display	10
RM17	48V DCDC converter/48V supercapacitor	10
RM18	Reserve	10
RM19	Reserve	20
RM20	Reserve	20
RM21	Reserve	30
RM22	Right rear seat module	40

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RM23	Left rear weat module/Rear seat controller	40
RM24	Left restraint module	30
RM25	High voltage battery	15
RM26	High voltage battery	15
RM27	On-board charger and DCDC module	10
RM28	Reserve	10
RM29	Reserve	10
RM30	Airbag controller	10
RM31	Front Lidar box	10
RM32	Reserve	10
RM33	Reserve	10
RM34	Reserve	20
RM35	Reserve	20

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RM36	Left rear taillight	10
RM37	Right rear taillight	10
RM38	Left front headlight	20
RM39	Right front headlight	20
RM40	Reserve	10
RM41	Reserve	10
RM42	Reserve	10

Driver's tools

The driver's tools are placed in the boot storage box, which include:

- Wheel anti-theft bolt adapter
- Electric inflation pump
- Towing ring
- Tyre repair liquid tank
- Warning triangle

ⓘ Note!

After the driver's tools are used, please put them back to their original positions to avoid tool damage during emergency braking.

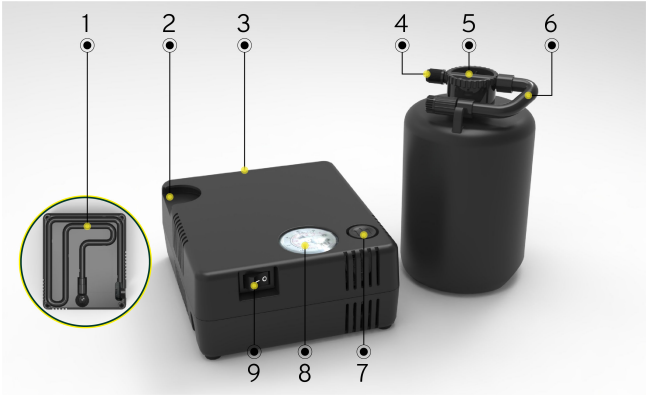
Quick temporary tyre repair

Tyre repair kit

The tyre repair kit can be used to temporarily seal punctures.

ⓘ Note!

The tyre repair kit can only potentially temporarily repair a tyre where the puncture is in the tread area of the tyre. Tyre repair kit cannot be used for sealing if defects such as large cracks, splits or other similar damages are found in tyres.

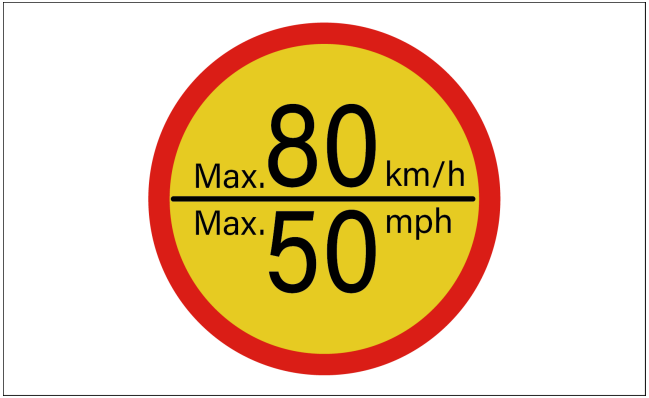


1. Electric inflater pump hose
2. Tyre repair liquid slot
3. Electric inflater pump power cable connector
4. Tyre repair liquid valve
5. Tyre repair liquid cover
6. Tyre repair liquid connecting hose
7. Bleed valve
8. Tyre pressure gauge
9. Electric inflater pump switch

Emergency tyre inflation

1. Make sure the electric inflation pump switch is turned off before taking out the electric inflation pump power cable connector and the electric inflation pump hose.
2. Loosen the valve dust cover and connect the electric inflation pump hose to tyre valve.
3. Connect the power cable connector of the electric inflation pump with the on-board 12V power supply to energize the vehicle.
4. Press the electric inflation pump switch to start the electric inflation pump. Inflate the tyre to the pressure recommended on tyre pressure label.
5. Turn off the electric inflation pump, and disconnect the electric inflation pump hose and the electric inflation pump power cable connector.
6. Refit the valve dust cover.

Quick tyre repair



1. Tear off the maximum allowable speed sticker and stick it to steering wheel.
2. Make sure the electric inflater pump switch is off, and then take out the electric inflater pump power cable connector.
3. Tyre repair kit: insert the tyre repair liquid cover into the card slot from the side.
4. Loosen the valve dust cover and connect the tyre repair liquid connecting hose to tyre valve.
5. Connect the electric inflater pump power cable connector with 12V power supply of the car to energize the pump.
6. Press the electric inflater pump switch button.

7. Inflate the tyre to the pressure recommended on tyre pressure label.
8. Turn off the electric inflater pump and disconnect the electric inflater pump power cable.
9. Tyre repair kit: remove the tyre repair liquid.
10. Remove the tyre repair liquid connecting hose from tyre valve and refit the valve dust cover.
11. Immediately drive 10min or 8km at a maximum speed of 80km/h speed to allow the sealant to evenly apply and seal the tyre.

⚠ Warning!

- Park the vehicle in a safe place away from traffic before attempting a temporary repair and ensure that P - Park is selected.
- If on the side of the road, you must turn on the hazard warning lamp, wear a reflective vest, then get off the car and place the warning triangle at specified distance.

⚠ Warning!

When repairing a tyre with tyre repair kit:

- Tyre repair liquid is harmful and should be kept out of the reach of children.
- Prevent tyre repair liquid from splashing into your eyes.
- If you accidentally ingest tyre repair liquid, go to see a doctor immediately.
- If you accidentally come into contact with tyre repair liquid, wash the contact area with soap or water immediately.
- Never stand next to the tyre when the electric inflater pump is working. If the tyre is cracked or uneven, turn off the electric inflation pump immediately and contact your Lotus retailer inspection as soon as possible.

After repairing a tyre with tyre repair kit:

- The car speed shall not exceed 80km/h.
- The driving distance of the vehicle should not exceed 200km, and go to your Lotus retailer as soon as possible to repair or replace the tyres.
- Avoid emergency steering and emergency braking.
- If you perceive unusual vibrations or noises while driving, slow down immediately and stop the car safely.

! Caution!

- The electric inflation pump should not work for more than 10 minutes, otherwise it will be damaged due to overheating.
- After tyre inflation, be sure to install the valve dust cover to avoid damage to tyre valve.

Check tyre pressure

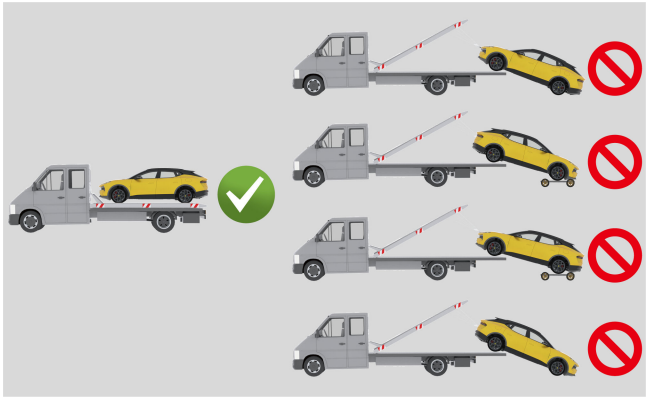
1. Connect the electric inflation pump hose to the tyre valve.
2. Connect the power cable connector of electric inflation pump with the on-board 12V power supply.
3. Turn on the electric inflation pump switch and read the tyre pressure on pressure gauge:

   If the tyre pressure is lower than 1.8 bar, it means that the tyre is not completely sealed, and you should not continue to drive the vehicle.

   If the tyre pressure exceeds 1.8 bar, inflate the tyre to the pressure recommended on tyre pressure label. If the tyre pressure is too high, use a bleed valve to release the air from the tyre.
4. Turn off the electric inflation pump switch, and disconnect the electric inflation pump hose and the electric inflation pump power connector.

Having your car towed

Towing method



Vehicle towing method

If towing is required, it must be performed in accordance with local regulations. Do not tow a vehicle with its wheels on ground. When towing a vehicle, please power off the vehicle and load it onto a platform trailer. The vehicle may be damaged if it is towed by incorrect towing methods or improper towing equipment.

Lotus recommends that you seek help from professional roadside assistance personnel for towing.

Caution!

- Before towing the vehicle, please contact your Lotus retailer to confirm if the vehicle has successfully disconnected the low-voltage power supply. If towing a vehicle without disconnecting the low voltage, it will increase traction resistance and may damage the vehicle's drive motor.
- Because the vehicles is fitted with an air suspension system, secure the vehicle by using tie-down straps on the tyres rather than the vehicle's body when transporting on a suitable transporter or trailer, and avoid attaching ropes to the wheel rims alone.

Towing procedures

Towing mode

When the vehicle needs to be towed to a trailer, the towing mode should be activated first. The specific operation is as follows:

1. Ensure to keep the valid key in the vehicle. In case of a card key, it must be placed in the wireless charging induction area.
2. Open and close the driver door once.
3. Press and hold the hazard warning lamp switch for more than 7 seconds until the warning lamp on the driver display performs BIT (the warning lamp comes on and goes out after a few seconds) once.
4. Shift the gear into N position.

You can exit towing mode in any of the following ways:

- Shift the gear to Park (P) position to lock the vehicle from the outside.
- Shift the gear to Drive (D) or Reverse (R) position to start driving the vehicle.

Warning!

- No person or object should be positioned at the rear of the trailer when the vehicle is being towed onto the trailer.
- Once the vehicle is secured on the trailer, please deactivate the towing mode and apply the EPB to ensure the parking safety of the vehicle.
- The driver and passengers must not stay in the vehicle when the vehicle is being towed.

Caution!

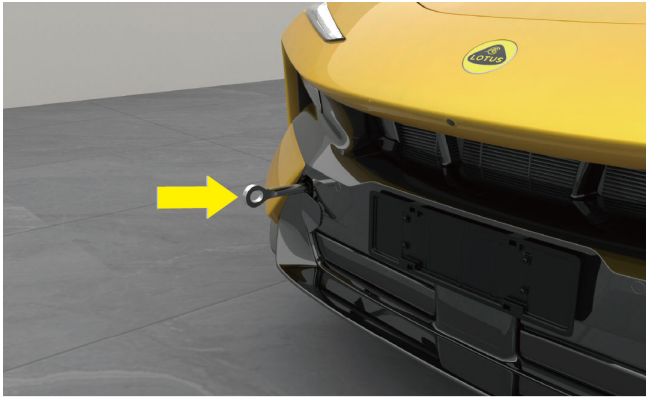
- The vehicle must be in towing mode before it is towed to a platform trailer.
- During transportation, ensure that the wheels cannot rotate.

ⓘ Note!

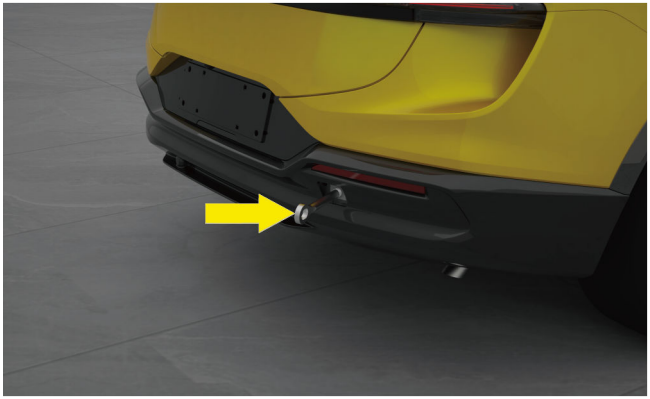
Towing mode is only applicable when the vehicle is towed to a platform trailer.

Use a towing eye

1. Open the tailgate of the vehicle and take out the towing eye from the boot storage box.
2. Open the cover plate of the towing eye mounting hole, which can be found on the right side of the front and rear bumpers.



Mounting hole of front bumper towing ring



Mounting hole of rear bumper towing ring

3. Screw the towing eye in place and continue tightening until the towing eye is fully screwed in and then attach the towing device to the towing eye.
4. Before towing, please activate the Towing mode, and ensure that the hazard warning lamps are turned on and no one is in the vehicle.
5. Install the towing device onto the towing hook, and then tow the vehicle onto a flatbed truck.
6. After the vehicle is towed to the designated position on the flatbed truck, use suitable chocks and tie-down straps to secure the wheels.

Caution!

- When installing the towing eye, be sure to screw it into the limit position to prevent vibration.
- To ensure safety, make sure that the towing direction of the towing device is consistent with the front-and-rear direction of the vehicle as possible when operating as described above.
- This vehicle is equipped with air suspension, do not use tie straps on the vehicle to secure the trailer, the vehicle should be secured only by chocking and strapping around the road wheels.
- Towing is allowed only when there is no safety risk to the vehicle. If the battery pack is deformed, leaks, smokes, etc., you should eliminate safety risks immediately.
- The hazard warning lights must be turned on when towing the vehicle.
- Do not tow the vehicle for long distances when using the towing eye to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Note!

- Towing eye removal is the reverse of fitment.
- If the vehicle is equipped with an electric towing hook, use it to tow another vehicle or allow the vehicle being towed from the rear of the vehicle.
- There is no mounting hole of rear bumper towing ring for vehicles equipped with an electric towing hook.

Getting out of a trapped situation

When your vehicle gets stuck in sand, snow, mud, etc., keeping the following procedures in mind will help you get out of the trouble:

1. Observe the area in front of and behind the vehicle to make sure there are no obstructions.
2. Turn the steering wheel left and right to rub away the sludge around the front wheels.
3. Engage into D or R gear and move the vehicle forward and backward slowly.
4. If you cannot get out of trouble after several attempts, please seek for a professional towing service.

Warning!

- When the vehicle is driven out of a pit by moving back and forth, it may suddenly rush forward or backward. During this process, attention must be paid at all times to avoid injury or death.
- Towing requires a slow start, and acceleration is not allowed until the tow rope is tensioned to tow the trapped vehicle.

ⓘ Note!

You can place wood blocks, stones or other materials under the front wheels to help increase the adhesive friction.

Emergency rescue procedures

PPE for rescue personnel

This vehicle is equipped with a high voltage battery, which may result in serious conditions such as high voltage electricity leakage, damage to battery pack, leakage of chemical liquid, etc. in the event of serious collisions. Therefore, the emergency rescue personnel should wear appropriate protective equipment to ensure personal safety when rescuing on the vehicle.

- Wear safety goggles when operating high-voltage systems.
- Wear 1,000 V insulating gloves when touching high-voltage components.
- Use insulating tools when operating high-voltage components.
- Prepare insulating protective hooks.
- Prepare a fire extinguisher suitable for lithium batteries.

⚠ Warning!

- A supervision process should be followed when the emergency rescue personnel is operating on high-voltage components. It is stipulated that one person supervises and another person operates.Two or more operators working simultaneously is prohibited. When the operator is working, another person should not contact him.
- The emergency rescue personnel must not wear metal jewellery when performing rescue operations.



Acid and alkali resistant gloves



Insulating protective hook



Fire extinguisher



Fire blanket



High-voltage insulating gloves



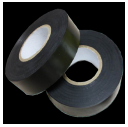
Insulating cap



Safety goggles



Insulating shoes



Insulating tape



Insulating tools

ⓘ Note!

The insulation tool is classified into five grades according to the heat resistance grade of the insulation material: A, E, B, F and H:

- Grade A: maximum allowable temperature ≤ 105°C. Winding temperature rise limit 60K.
- Grade E: maximum allowable temperature ≤ 120°C. Winding temperature rise limit 75K.
- Grade B: maximum allowable temperature ≤ 130°C. Winding temperature rise limit 80K.
- Grade F: maximum allowable temperature ≤ 155°C. Winding temperature rise limit 100K.
- Grade H: the maximum allowable temperature ≤ 180°C. Winding temperature rise limit 125K.

Release method of high-voltage system

You can deactivate the vehicle high voltage system by the steps below:

1. Stop the vehicle with the shift lever engaged into P.



Bonnet opening handle

2. Pull twice the bonnet opening handle successively to unlock the bonnet and close all doors and boot lid.
3. Open the bonnet, remove and take out the trim panel from the bonnet.



Low-voltage MSD plug

4. Find the low-voltage MSD in bonnet and remove it, and the vehicle will deactivate the high-voltage system automatically.

⚠ Warning!

- Be sure to wear appropriate personal protective equipment when touching any high-voltage components.
- Never touch the high-voltage battery components even though the high-voltage system has been released. Be sure to wear appropriate personal protective equipment if it is necessary to operate the high-voltage battery components.
- If the damage is found in the high-voltage components, be sure to wrap the damaged parts with the insulation tapes.

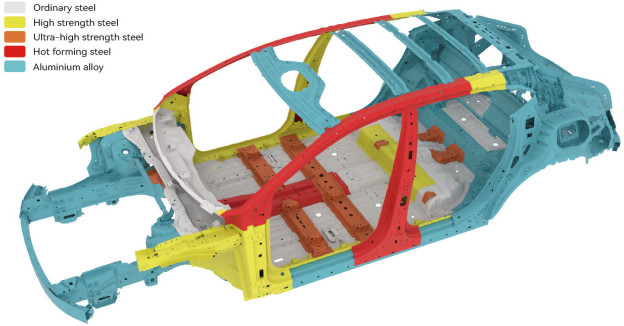
Caution!

In case of a vehicle collision, the high-voltage system will be automatically released.

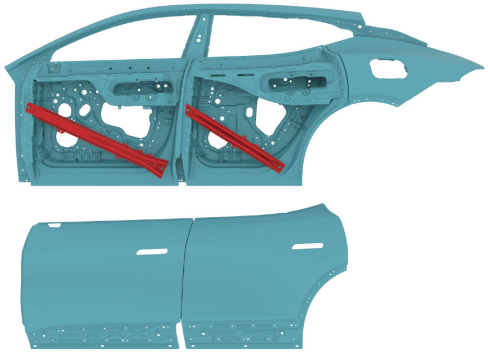
Regarding vehicle cutting

High strength steel position

If the vehicle body needs to be cut for rescue, be sure to use the appropriate tools for this purpose and wear appropriate protective equipment.

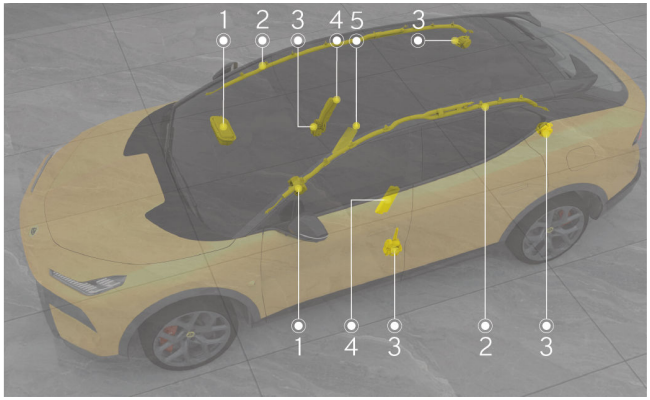


High strength steel position on body



High strength steel position on door

Airbag assembly



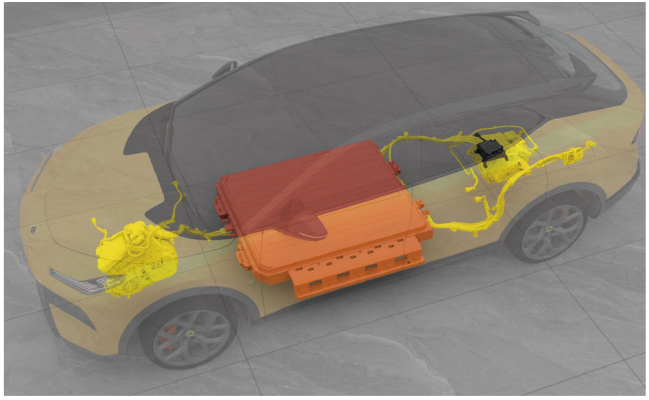
Airbag assembly

1. Front frontal airbag
2. Curtain airbag
3. Seat belt retractor
4. Front side airbag
5. Central airbag

To ensure the safety of rescuers, cutting is prohibited when the airbag is not deployed, but it can be done under the following conditions:

- When the front frontal airbags, side airbags, central airbag and curtain airbags have been deployed.
- When both low voltage and high voltage parts of the vehicle are powered off.

No cutting areas



HV components or wiring harnesses can be cut when they are powered off.

No cutting in the high voltage battery area.



Do not cut the battery.

Rescue of wading vehicle

The extent of damage to vehicles partially or fully submerged in water may not be obvious, but there is a risk of leakage from high voltage systems. When rescuing vehicles in water, the rescue personnel must wear corresponding protective equipment to avoid injuries or casualties caused by electric shock.

⚠ Warning!

- The rescue personnel must wear appropriate protective equipment before touching high-voltage system components in water to prevent electric shock.
- After the rescue personnel remove the vehicle from the water area, be sure to wait for the vehicle to dry completely before carrying out corresponding operations to prevent electric shock.

Rescue of vehicle on fire

When the vehicle catches fire, rescue personnel shall first assess the fire intensity. If the fire is small and under control, rescue personnel shall adopt suitable fire suppression methods; dry powder fire extinguishers, carbon dioxide fire extinguishers and dry sand can all be used to contain small fires.

If the fire is large or the battery is found to be severely squeezed or bent, the rescue personnel should contain the flames by constantly spraying the vehicle with large amounts of water, and keep surrounding combustibles away from the burning vehicle as soon as possible so as to prevent the fire from spreading.

When the vehicle catches fire, the occupants in the vehicle should leave the vehicle as soon as possible, call the emergency call number according to the scene situation, and inform the rescue personnel that the vehicle on fire is a hybrid vehicle models equipped with high-voltage components.

⚠ Warning!

If the rescue personnel find that there are occupants in the vehicle and the door cannot be opened during rescue, they can use sharp and hard tools to knock on the edge of the glass of the door to help the occupants trapped in the vehicle break the window to escape.

! Caution!

Fires in high-voltage components must be extinguished by using a fire extinguisher suitable for lithium batteries.



DATA |

Vehicle identification

Vehicle nameplate



Vehicle nameplate location

The vehicle nameplate is located below the right B-pillar and can be viewed when the front right door is opened. The vehicle nameplate contains vehicle information.

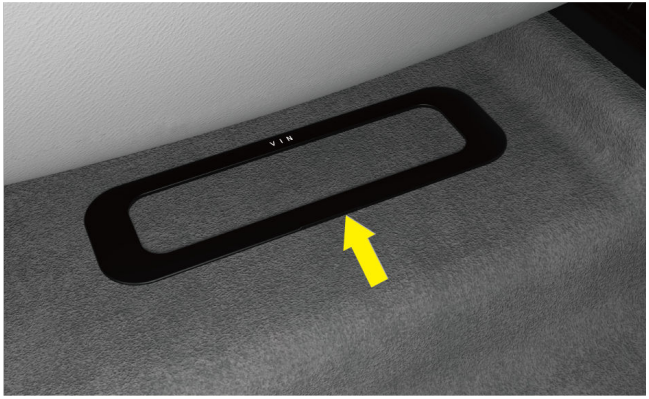
For vehicles equipped with an electric towing hook, the nameplate will display information about the maximum allowable towing mass.

VIN location

The vehicle indentification number (VIN) is the legal identification mark of a vehicle.



VIN at lower left corner of windscreen



VIN at the cross member of front right seat

The VIN at the cross member of front right seat is covered by carpet, and it can be found when the seat is moved backward.

VINs can also be found at the following locations:

- Left side of bonnet inner panel.
- Below the right B-pillar inner panel.
- Front right door inner panel.
- Right rear door inner panel.
- Right side of tailgate inner panel.
- Left wheel housing side member.

! Caution!

Scratching, erasing and covering up, concealing, altering or painting the VIN is prohibited.

How to read VIN

The VIN can be read by diagnostic tools. The specific steps are as follows:

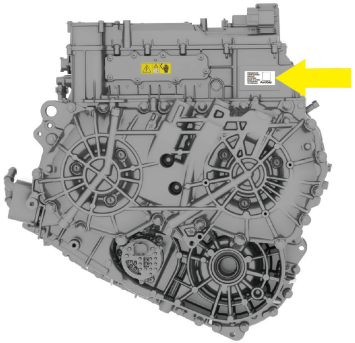
1. Connect the on-board diagnostic (OBD-II) socket;
2. Contact the Lotus retailer to authorize the diagnostic system for on-board diagnostic (OBD-II) sockets;
3. Start the vehicle;
4. The diagnostic system automatically reads the VIN.

! Caution!

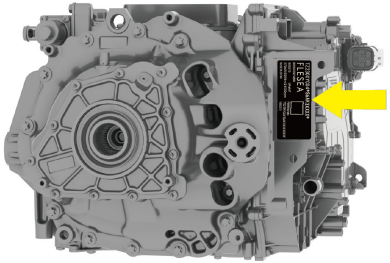
Do not connect other devices to the OBD-II socket. Unauthorized third parties may gain access to vehicle data, resulting in degraded performance of safety-related systems. Only equipment authorized by Lotus retailer are allowed to be connected with OBD-II socket.

Drive motor model and number

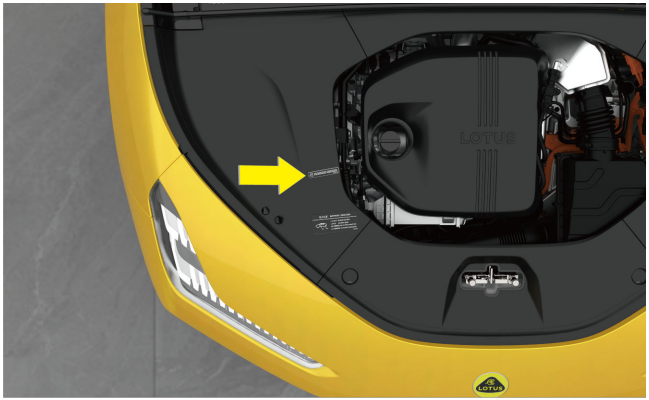
The drive motor model and number are indicated on the drive motor label, on the left side of engine compartment cover and the left sheet metal of tailgate.



Drive motor type 1 label position



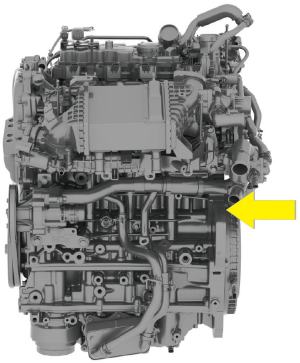
Drive motor type 2 label position



Front drive motor label position



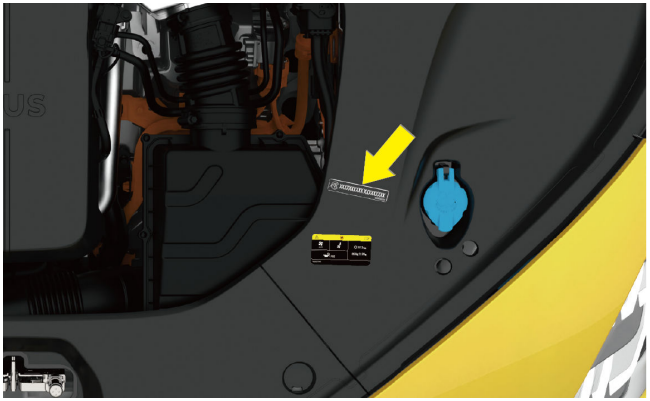
Rear drive motor label position



Engine label position

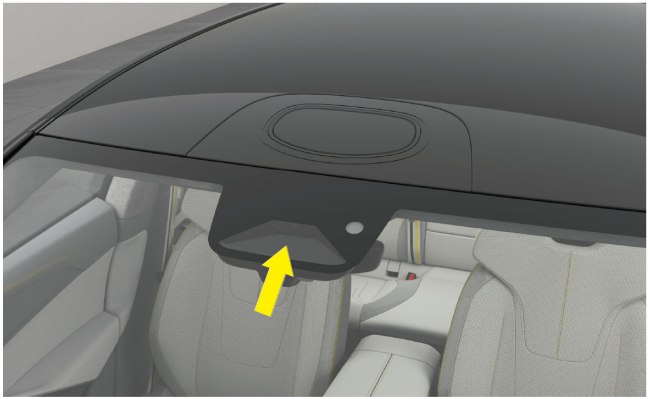
Engine model and number

The engine model and number of the vehicle are indicated on the engine body and the right side of engine compartment cover.



Front engine label position

Microwave window



The microwave window is fixed horizontally in the centre, vertically upward position of the front windscreen. Information about the vehicle is stored in the microwave window. Please keep the front windscreen clean and prevent foreign objects from blocking the microwave window.

! Caution!

- It is forbidden to block the microwave window, otherwise it cannot be recognized by the electronic identification device outside the car.
- Avoid pasting the necessary traffic signs onto the microwave window.

Technical parameter

Dimension parameters

Vehicle outline dimensions		
Length(mm)		5,103
Width(mm)		2,019
Height(mm)	R20 rim	1,630
	R21 rim*	1,636

Note: components that are excluded from the measurement scope of the vehicle's overall length, width and height are not included in the measurement scope of the vehicle's external dimensions. Examples include: external logos, anti-collision rubber blocks, reverse assist devices, door handles, external rearview mirrors, etc.

Vehicle chassis parameters		
Front track(mm)	R20 rim	1,738
	R21 rim*	1,736
Rear track(mm)	R20 rim	1,744
	R21 rim*	1,741
Wheelbase(mm)		3,019
Front overhang(mm)		980
Rear overhang(mm)		1,104

Performance parameters

Performance parameters		
Engine model		DHE20-DFZ
Front drive motor model		TZ220QYA02
Rear drive motor model		TZ230XYC06
Maximum design speed (km/h)	R20 rim	210
	R21 rim*	230

Performance parameters	
Maximum gradeability	40%

Drive motor parameters

Drive motor parameters		
Motor type	TZ220QYA02	TZ230XYC06
Drive type	4X4 (full-time drive)	4X4 (full-time drive)
Rated power (kW)	100	160
Rated speed (rpm)	7,000	8,633
Peak power (kW)	310	390
Peak speed (rpm)	18,800	21,000
Peak torque (Nm)	400	535

Engine parameters

Engine specifications	
Engine type	DHE20-DFZ

Engine specifications	
Engine displacement (ml)	1,974
Emission standard	Euro 6e
Maximum net power (kW)	145 (5,500 rpm)
Rated speed (rpm)	5,500
Maximum speed (rpm)	5,700
Maximum net torque (Nm)	360 (2,000~3,000 rpm)

Weight parameters

Vehicle mass parameters			
Models		LLMHPEL1C5000F	LLMHPEL1C5100F
Unladen mass (kg)		2,625 2,690	2,690
Maximum laden mass (kg)		3,100 3,130	3,130
Maximum total mass (kg)	Front axle	1,499 1,490	1,507
	Rear axle	1,601 1,640	1,623

High voltage battery parameters

High voltage battery parameters	
High voltage battery pack manufacturer	Quzhou Jidian Electric Vehicle Technology Co., Ltd.
High voltage battery cell manufacturer	Times Geely (Sichuan) Power Battery Co., Ltd.
Brand model	NBP701
Type	Ternary lithium ion battery
Total storage capacity (kWh)	70
Rated voltage (V)	787
Rated capacity (Ah)	89
Outline dimension of assembly (mm)	(1,668±3)×(1,580±3)×(157.5±3)
Assembly weight (kg)	408±12

High voltage battery parameters	
Maximum battery cell temperature (℃)	55
Maximum battery cell voltage (V)	4.4
Minimum battery cell voltage (V)	2.5

Seat parameters

Item	Front seat adjustment	Rear middle seat adjustment	Rear side seat adjustment
Set seat fore and aft position (mm)	Adjust forward by 202.8, and adjust backward by 57.2	Not adjustable	Not adjustable
Set backrest angle (°)	Fold forward by 28, and adjust backward by 45	Fold forward by 95, and adjust backward by 7	Fold forward by 95, and adjust backward by 7
Seat headrest adjustment (mm)	Not adjustable	Adjust up by 64.5	Adjust up by 40
Set seat height position (mm)	Adjust up by 32.5, and adjust down by 32.5	Not adjustable	Not adjustable
Set seat cushion inclination (°)	Adjust up by 5.2, and adjust down by 5.4	Not adjustable	Not adjustable

Wheel alignment parameter

Wheel alignment parameter		
Front Wheel (Single Side)	Wheel camber (′)	–30±36
	Toe-in angle (′)	–3±5
	Kingpin caster angle (°)	R20:5.87±0.85 R21*:5.7±0.85
	Kingpin inclination angle (°)	7.8±1

Wheel alignment parameter		
Rear Wheel (Single Side)	Wheel camber (')	-67±41
	Toe-in angle (')	6±5

Rim and Tyre specifications

Rim and Tyre specifications					
Specification		Front: 255/50 R20	Rear: 285/45 R20	Front: 265/45 R21*	Rear: 285/45 R21*
Pressure (bar)	Partial load	2.8	2.8	2.8	2.8
	Full load	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0
Wheel rims		8.5J × 20	9.5J × 20	9.0J × 21	9.5J × 21
Wheel dynamic balance (inner/ outer residual unbalance)	Inner side of front wheel	≤10	–	≤10	–
	Outer side of front wheel	≤10	–	≤10	–
	Inner side of rear wheel	–	≤10	–	≤10
	Outer side of rear wheel	–	≤10	–	≤10
Wheel offset		ET35	ET38	ET43	ET47

⚠ Warning!

- Due to differences in wheel assembly, do not change the position of any wheel assembly to avoid vehicle damage or accidents. For replacement, please go to the Lotus retailer.
- Only tyres that meet Lotus-specified load capacity and speed rating specifications may be replaced. Contact your Lotus retailer for the specific specifications.

Brake parameters

Brake parameters		
Brake system (named by the number of front brake caliper pistons)	4-piston braking system	6-piston braking system*
Type	Hydraulic brake	Hydraulic brake
Assist type	Electric assist	Electric assist
Brake pedal free travel (mm)	≤20	≤20
Thickness of front new brake disc (mm)	34	40
Front brake disc wear limit (mm)	32	38
Thickness of rear new brake disc (mm)	26	26
Rear brake disc wear limit (mm)	24	24
Thickness of front new brake pad (note: thickness of friction material) (mm)	About 8	About 8.28

Brake parameters		
Front brake pad wear limit (note: thickness of friction material) (mm)	2	2
Thickness of rear new brake pad (note: thickness of friction material) (mm)	About 7	About 7
Rear brake pad wear limit (note: thickness of friction material) (mm)	2	2
Parking brake type	Electronic parking brake (EPB)	Electronic parking brake (EPB)

Fluid specification and capacity

Fluid specification and capacity		
Name	Model	Filling amount
Gasoline	RON 95 octane and above unleaded gasoline	52L
Engine oil	SP 0W-20	First filling: 6±0.1L

Fluid specification and capacity			
			Replace the oil filter during maintenance: 5±0.1L Do not replace the oil filter during maintenance: 4.6±0.1L
Engine coolant	–		9.37L
Transmission lubricant	Shell E-Fluids E6 i DHTF		First filling: 4±0.1L Add during maintenance: 2.9±0.1L
Drive motor lubricant	V-UPLO		First filling: 2.3±0.1L Add during maintenance: 1.7L
Drive motor coolant	–		14.5L
A/C refrigerant	R-1234yf		800±20g
Brake fluid	BASFHYD RAULAN	4-piston braking system	935±50ml
	AN404(Class 6)	6-piston braking system*	915±50ml

INDEX

Numerics

12V power supply 157

A

Acoustic vehicle alerting system 184
Active anti-roll bar* 188
Active grille shutter (AGS) 191
Active rear spoiler* 184
Adaptive cruise control (ACC) 202
Adjustment of steering wheel 89
Air outlet 151
Air suspension 186
Airbag deployment conditions 35
Android Auto 270
Anti roll-over program (ARP) 251
Apple CarPlay 272
AUTO HOLD 197
Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) 236
Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) 225
Autonomous parking assist (APA)* 255

B

Battery 301
Before you drive 178
Blind spot detection (BSD) 241
Bluetooth settings 270
Bonnet 82
Brake assist system (BAS) 250
Brake fluid 308
Brake parameters 369
Buttons on steering wheel 89

C

Change of ownership 299
Charging cable 51
Charging guidance 56
Charging preparation 51

Child passenger safety guide 37
Child safety lock 45
Child seat 37
Comfort stop (CST) 246
Contact Lotus 15
Coolant 306

D

Daily maintenance 292
Desktop 267
Dimension parameters 364
Disabling of passenger front airbag 35
Door opening warning (DOW) 245
Doors 69
Drive motor model and number 362
Drive motor parameters 365
Drive type 191
Driver performance support (DPS) 260
Driver's tools 344
Driving modes 189

E

Electronic parking brake (EPB) 198
Electronic stability control (ESC) 247
Emergency call 320
Energy recovery 196
Engine model and number 363
Engine oil 305
Engine parameters 365
Evasive maneuver assist (EMA)* 229
Event data recorder (EDR) 14
Exterior maintenance 311
External lighting control 107

F

Fluid specification and capacity 369
Four-zone climate control system 141
Front centre armrest 170
Front cross traffic alert (FCTA) 230
Front of vehicle 22
Front seat adjustment 132

Fuel filling method 60
Fuel information 61
Function of airbag 32
Function of seat belt 27

G

Garage 268
Garage door opener (HomeLink)* 130
Guidance for traffic accidents 320

H

Hazard warning lights 322
Head-up display (HUD) 105
High voltage battery parameters 366
High voltage system information 323
Highway assist (HWA)* 210
Hill descent control (HDC) 249
Hill start assist (HSA) 251
How to read VIN 361

I

Indicators and warning lamps 98
Inside mirror adjustment 129
Inspection and replacement of wiper blade 310
Instrument overview 94
Interior maintenance 315
Internal 23
Internal lighting control 112

J

Jump starting 330

K

Key introduction 61

L

Lane keep assist(LKA) 232
Life detection and care 46
Location of airbag 34
Lotus hyper pilot* 217

Lotus security system V 47

M

Microwave window 364
Multimedia 274

N

Navigation 280
Necessity of maintenance 292
Network settings 269
Notes to users 265

O

On-board monitoring(OBM) 195
OTA system upgrade 15
OTA system upgrade operation 286
Outside mirror adjustment 118
Outside streaming mirror adjustment 122

P

Panoramic sunroof* 152
Parking assist (PA) 252
Parking comfort 174
Performance parameters 365
Phone 279
Pollen filter 310
Post impact control (PIC) 251
Power on/off 179
PPE for rescue personnel 352
Precautions during run-in period 317
Prompts and illustrations 13

Q

Quick temporary tyre repair 345

R

Radio information 15
Rear centre armrest 171
Rear collision warning (RCW) 240
Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) 243
Rear display 288
Rear of vehicle 22

Rear Seat Adjustment 135
Record of ownership change 299
Reflective vest 323
Regarding vehicle cutting 355
Release method of high-voltage system 353
Replace fuse 332
Rescue of vehicle on fire 357
Rescue of wading vehicle 357
Rim and Tyre specifications 368

S

Safe parking 195
Scheduled maintenance 293
Seasonal tyres 304
Seat heating 138
Seat parameters 367
Seat ventilation* 140
Sensors and cameras 198
Service record 296
Set up 282
Shift operation 182
Shortcut panel 268
Sound 275
Start 180
Start-up guidance 267
Steering mode 191
Steering Wheel Heating 93
Storage and maintenance 300
Storage device 160
Sun visors and vanity mirrors 159
Sunroof 152
System application 274

T

Tailgate 84
Tire introduction 18
Towing method 348
Towing mode* 171
Towing procedures 349
Traction control system (TCS) 248
Tyre chains 304
Tyre pressure monitoring system 193

Tyre wear 303

U

USB-C ports 156
User notice 12
Using the seat belts correctly 28

V

Vehicle accessories 14
Vehicle lifting 329
Vehicle nameplate 360
Vehicle scrapping 13
Vehicle use preference function 269
VIN location 360
Visual parking assist (VPA) 253
Voice 276

W

Warning triangle 323
Warranty coverage 294
Warranty period 294
Weight parameters 366
Wheel alignment parameter 367
Windows 78
Windscreen washer fluid 309
Wiper control 115
Wireless device charging 154



ELETRE X 2026 European Union-EN B000001343 Copyright ©2026 Wuhan Lotus Tech Co.,Ltd.